Kentico CMS Community Site Guide



Table of Contents

Part I	Introduction	6
1	About this guide	6
2	Community features	7
Part II	Part 1	9
1	Getting started	9
	Installing the site	
	First sight	
2	User registration and Sign-in	16
	Current functionality	
	Modifying the registration form	20
	Modifying user profiles	
	Enabling public profile fields visibility controls	
	Registration approval and double opt-in	
	Windows Live ID	
	Overview Registering your application	
	Settings	
	Adding the sign in button	
3	Groups	
	Current functionality	
	Creating a new group	
	Modifying the group public profile	
	Modifying templates for group pages	
4	Forums	63
	Current functionality	
	Modifying the forums structure	
5	Blogs	76
	Current functionality	
6	Media libraries	79
	Current functionality	
	Creating custom media libraries	
	Publishing more than one global media library	
7	Design and styles	
	Changing the header image	
	Modifying the stylesheet	
Part III	Part 2	104
1	Introduction	
2	Pre-development tasks	
	Creating the site	

Assigning the CSS stylesheet

2

113

3

	Defining web part containers	116
	Uploading images	119
	Creating a sample poll	121
	Creating the tag groups	123
	Creating the News notification template	126
	Creating a sample Media library	128
3	Creating the Master page	. 131
4	Creating the Search page	. 138
5	Creating the Logon page	. 145
6	Creating the Home page	. 152
7	Creating a starter page template	. 162
8	Creating the Blogs section	. 168
	Creating the Blogs page	168
	Creating the Create page	177
	Creating the Blog list page	182
	Creating the Blog posts page	185
9	Creating the News page	
10	Creating the Media page	
11	Creating the Forums section	
••	Creating the Forums page	
	Creating the Forum search page	
12	Creating the Groups section	
12		
	Creating the Groups page	208
	Creating the Create page	212
	Creating the Management page	216 221
	Creating the Access page Creating groups starter template	221
	Creating groups starter template	229
	Creating the Members page	234
	Creating the Media list page	239
	Creating the Media page	242
	Creating the Forums page	246
	Preparing the Group pages section	251
	Creating the Template page	251
	Creating the Pages page	255
	Creating the Group pages title page	261
13	Creating the Members section	. 263
	Creating the Members page	263
	Creating the Online page	268
	Creating the Profile page	272
	Creating the Members management starter template	278
	Creating the Management page	282
	Creating the Invitations page	287
	Creating the Messages page	291
	Creating the Friends page	296
	Creating the Manage friends page	301
14	Creating the Special pages	. 304
	Creating the Special pages folder	304
	Creating the Access denied page	306
	Creating the Blog unsubscribe page	311

	Creating the Board unsubscribe page	314
	Creating the Forum unsubscribe page	317
	Creating the Friend management page	321
	Creating the Invitation acceptation page	326
	Creating the Registration approval page	329
15	Ordering pages in the content tree	.334
16	Making the settings	. 335



1 Introduction

1.1 About this guide

Welcome to **Kentico CMS Community Guide**. This guide will provide you assistance with building online communities using Kentico CMS.

Kentico CMS comes with the sample **Community Starter site**. This sample web site template can be conveniently used as a starting point of your own community site development. In the first part of this guide, we will go through the various customization tasks that need to be done if you want to develop your community site based on this template. The second part will describe building community sites from scratch.



Welcome to our community

Join now »

This community site is a virtual meeting point for those who like travelling, adventure, discovering new places, meeting new people and all the things related to it.

If you are interested in this sort of things, don't hesitate and join now!

Latest blog posts

The long long flight

Finally, after some 23 hours of flight, I am on the other side of the world than I was yesterday around this time. I feel terribly tired after the long flight, but before I go to sleep, I found some time to write about the first impressions of my journey.

Posted on 10/26/2008 3:05:12 PM

Sign in≫

Flying tomorrow

Hi everybody, my name is Kelly Taylor and I come from Brno, Czech Republic. Tomorrow is my big day. Finally, after six months of hard everyday work, I decided to have some nice time and go on holiday. Australia has always been one of the places I had wanted to visit one day, and now, with my great new job and the wage I get for it, it is finally affordable for me to get there. Posted on 10/26/2008 2:19:18 PM

Latest forum posts

RE:Hostels in London

Well, ok...well...there is actually not enough room for two guests in my place...

Posted on 1/7/2009 3:13:50 PM

RE:Hostels in London

Thanks, but the reason why I'm looking for a hostel in London is actually that I'm gonna be waiting for my boyfriend there. He'll be returning from the States and his plane lands at Heathrow... But we can come to Edinburgh together some time later and stay at your place if you want...?

Posted on 1/7/2009 3:11:33 PM

RE:Hostels in London



Latest news

<u>Travellers' community</u> <u>site launched</u>

We have just launched our new community site intended to become a virtual meeting point for travellers from all around the world.

Latest Groups

African travellers This is a group of travellers living in Africa. If you are one of them, please register to the group. It is a great chance f...

1.2 Community features

Community sites are such web sites that bring the possibility of on-line interconnection of people, usually those who share the same interests or who are members of some real-world group and have the need to meet on-line. For the purposes of the community, such site should provide the possibility of gathering in groups, discussing in forums, blogging, advanced membership with the possibility of friendship between users, customized user profiles, various sign-in possibilities, etc.

Kentico CMS is a full-featured solution for building complex community sites without any complex programming. Here is a list of the most important built-in community features of Kentico CMS:

- Community Groups
- Forums
- Blogs
- User profiles
- Badges
- Friends
- Bad words
- Abuse report
- Polls
- Content rating
- Time zones

All the implementation processes have been diminished to only a few clicks, so that you can use most of the features out-of-the-box.



9

2 Part 1

2.1 Getting started

2.1.1 Installing the site

To get started, you need to have the sample Community Site installed. There are two ways how this can be achieved:

1. If you are performing a new installation, you can choose the site in **Step 4** of the **Database Setup**. Select the **Choose starter site** radio-button and choose the **Community Site** from the list of starter sites. Click **Next** to finish the setup procedure.

	Database Setup - Step 4		
-			
Choose starter site	template uses the portal engine and it is the recommended choice for developers who are new to Kentico CMS.		
Community Site This is a web site template for a sample community site. Social networking features of Kentico CMS are used on the site to give you an idea of how they can be used on your web site. You can also modify this web site and use it as a base for the development of your own site. It uses the portal engine and is recommended for developers who are new to Kentico CMS.			
	Blank Site This template is intended for developers who want to create a new web site from scratch. It uses the portal engine.		
 Continue to the New site wiz Import existing Kentico CMS 			

2. If you already have Kentico CMS installed, but without the Community Site, you can easily add the site in **Site Manager -> Sites**.

a) Click the **New site wizard** link at the top left corner of the page.

CMS Site Mana	ager	Sites	Administ	ration	Settings	D
🎒 Sites						
🔞 <u>New site wizard</u>	s Imp	oort site or	objects	🧟 Ε×	port object:	5

b) In Step 1, choose Use web site template and click Next.

Step 1	Choose default web site If you choose to create a blank site, the wizard will guide you through the process of creating a new site. If you choose to use a template, you will be able to choose one of the predefined web site templates.	
◯ Create a nev ⊙ Use web site	w site using a wizard e template	
		Next >

c) In Step 2, choose Community Site form the list of available web site templates and click Next.

Step 2 ch	noose web site template oose the predefined web site template that will be used for your new web site. The web site template ny contain site structure, design, basic content, new document types and other settings.	
	capabilities and it can be used as a starting site that you modify as needed. It uses the portal engine and it's the recommended choice for developers who are new to Kentico CMS.	•
A series of the	Personal Site This is a web template for a sample Personal site. Several Kentico CMS features, such as blogs, forums and photo galleries, are included. It can be used as a cornerstone for the custom personal site development. The template uses the portal engine and it is the recommended choice for developers who are new to Kentico CMS.	
	Community Site This is a web site template for a sample community site. Social networking features of Kentico CMS are used on the site to give you an idea of how they can be used on your web site. You can also modify this web site and use it as a base for the development of your own site. It uses the portal engine and is recommended for developers who are new to Kentico CMS.	3
	Blank Site This template is intended for developers who want to create a new web site from scratch. It uses the portal engine.	
	< Previous Next >	

d) In Step 3, specify the display name, code name and domain name of your site and click Next.

Step 3 Ente	ter new site settings ter the display name and code name of the web site. The Domain field must contain the dr I use to access the web site during development (you may change it when the site goes liv ture is the main language of the web site.	omain that you ye). The default
	Community Site CommunitySite localhost	
		Previous Next >

e) In Step 4, leave the settings at their default values and click Next.

Step 4 Objects select Please select obje	ion cts which should be imported.
 All objects Web site Tools Administration Settings Clobal objects Molandistration Clobal objects Molandistration Development Development Development Molandistration Development 	Import objects Please note: The import process may overwrite your existing objects. The existing objects are marked with * and will be overwritten if checked. Please select the object type from the tree if you wish to change the default selection. Click Next to start the import of selected objects. Global selection Load default selection Select all objects Select only new objects Deselect all objects Import settings Assign all objects to the import fails On the site after import Delete incomplete site when import fails On out import objects where parent object is missing
	Previous Next >

f) Wait until the end of site import process and click Next.

Step 5	Import progress Objects are being imported.	
Starting site 'Col Copying objects Importing 'Notific		
Importing board Importing board Importing board Importing board Importing board Importing board	'Comments on Global Administrator' messages 'Group Czech Republic fans board' messages 'Group American travellers board' messages 'Group Asian travellers board' messages 'Group European travellers board' messages 'Group Australian travellers board' messages	
Importing board Importing board Importing 'Mess Importing media Importing media Importing media	'Comments on Noel Turpin' messages 'Group message board' messages age boards' objects a library 'Czech cities' file objects a library 'Media' file objects a library 'Media' file objects	
Importing 'Forun Importing forum Importing forum Importing forum Importing forum Importing forum	a libraries' objects n user favorites' objects 'General discussion' posts 'General discussion' posts 'General discussion' posts 'General discussion' posts 'General discussion' posts	
Imnorting forum	General discussion posts General discussion' nosts progress	

g) In the last step, you can click the **Edit your new web site** link to go to **CMS Desk**, where you can start editing the site immediately.

Step 6 The web site has been created successfully Now you can view and edit your new web site.	
<u>Edit your new web site</u> If this is your first web site, the default user account is administrator without password.	
	Finish

You can also click the **Finish** button to go back to **Site Manager -> Sites**, where the site should be listed with the name specified in Step 3.



2.1.2 First sight

14

When you have the Community Site installed and running, why not go to the live site and see it in action. To see all the features working, sign in using the **Sign in** form at the top of the right side column. Use e.g. user name **David** with blank password. Once signed-in, you should see the site as in the screenshot below:



1. At the very top of the page, you can see the **CMS Desk** and **CMS Site Manager** links. These can be used to access the administration interface from the live site. Default user name is *administrator* with blank password. Alternatively, the administration interface can be accessed via the following URLs: *<site domain>/CMSDesk* or *<site domain>/CMSSiteManager*.

2. Links to the current **user's public profile**, **profile editing**, **internal messaging inbox** and the **Sign out** link that can be used to log off the site.

3. Main menu. The menu reflects site structure, particular items in the menu lead to the following sections:

- Home home page of the web site, displaying latest blog and forum posts in the main area and various other information in the side column
- Blogs in this section, you can read blog posts in site users' blogs or easily create your own blog
 right on the live site and start blogging immediately
- News the news section is designed for displaying news items created by authorized CMS Desk

15

users, typically site administrators and editors

- **Media** in this section, you can view content of the site's public media libraries; various types of files can be stored in these libraries, while large file sizes (several GB) are supported
- Forums discussion forums, you can read or join discussions on various topics and create new topics; both classical and Q-A forum types are supported
- **Groups** in this section, you can view existing community groups and join some of them or even create your own new group; groups can have their own media libraries, forums, polls and message boards
- **Members** this is where you can see a complete list of site members; by right clicking their avatars, you can display a context menu allowing you to do several actions related to the clicked user; by left-clicking a user's avatar, you can view her public profile
- Examples in this section, you can find isolated examples of particular community web parts; these examples are particularly useful when you access them from CMS Desk, where you can view web part properties settings

4. This is the main zone where the **content** is displayed. On the Home page, it displays the Sign-in/ Join banner and extracts from the latest blog and forum posts.

5. Integrated **full-text search** of all documents on the site.

6. The shortcuts box displays **shortcuts to various community functions**. It offers different actions depending on which section of the site is currently displayed.

7. The rest of the side column displays various repeaters and information boxes depending on which section of the site is currently displayed.

2.2 User registration and Sign-in

2.2.1 Current functionality

In the following example, you will learn how to register to the site and become its member.

1. If you come to the site as a site visitor and want to register, there are several links to click. All of the links highlighted in the screenshot below will take you to the **Logon page** where registration can be performed. Click one of them.



2. On the logon page, site visitors can register by filling in the **Join the community** form. Enter some sample details and click **Register**.



Sign in		 Join the com	
User name:		User name:	Derek
Password:		First name:	Derek
	Remember me	Last name:	McKenzie
	Log on	E-mail:	ckenzie@example.com
Forgotten pa	assword	Password:	skokokokok
		Confirm password:	skokokok
		Gender:	💿 Male 🔘 Female
			Register

3. You will be redirected to your public profile. This profile is visible to all site visitors and users and gives them an overview about yourself. Let's modify your details a bit now. Click the **Edit my profile** link in the **Shortcuts** menu. You will be redirected to the profile editing page.

					Currer	nt user: Derek McKenzie (Derek) Edit my profile In	box <u>Sign out</u>
Commun	ity site							
Home Blogs Nev	vs Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples			Search
Member profile								
							Shortcuts	
	Derek						My profile Edit my profile	
	Badge:						My messages My friends	
	Full name:	Derek McKenz	ie				My invitations Create a new group	
	E-mail:	derek.mckenzi	e@example.com	1			Create a new blog	
	Created:	2/16/2009					Sign out	
	Gender:	Male						
	Date of birth	: N/A					My friends	
Forum posts:	0						Currently doesn't ha	ve any
Message board posts:	0						friends.	
Blog posts:	0							
Blog comments: Community points:	0						My blogs	
My announcements							Currently doesn't ha blogs.	ve any
· ·								
There are currently no announce	ments.						My groups	
Leave message		<u>Subscribe</u>					Currently is not mem group.	ber of any

4. Let's choose some avatar so that your profile looks more personal. Click the **Select pre-defined avatar** link as highlighted in the screenshot below.

Commun Starter s		Search
		beatch
My profile		Shortcuts
Personal settings Change	password Notifications	My profile Edit my profile
Username: Full name:	Derek Derek McKenzie	My messages My friends My invitations
E-mail:	derek.mckenzie@example.com	Create a new group
Display my e-mail to:	○ Nobody ○ All ③ Site members ○ Friends	<u>Create a new blog</u> Sign out
Nickname:	Derek	
Signature:		My blogs You currently do not have any blogs.
		My groups
Messaging notification e-mail:		You are currently not member of any group.
Time zone:	(none)	
Avatar:	Upload: Browse	Forum favorites
Gender:	⊙ Male ○ Female	No favorites found
Date of birth:		

5. The gallery of pre-defined avatars will be displayed. Choose one and click OK.



6. Let's also add your date of birth. Click the calendar icon next to the **Date of birth** field, pick a date and click **OK**.

7. Finally, click **OK** on the profile editing page to save the changes. If you click the **My profile** link in the **Shortcuts** menu again, you will see your profile with the avatar and date of birth added.



Further steps: This was only a brief example of what can be done. Try playing around with the settings and explore the various possibilities. You can for example use an image from your local disk instead of the pre-defined avatars. You can also go to the **Members** section, where profiles of all sample site users can be accessed from. Notice that the **Shortcuts** menu displays various actions depending on what content is currently displayed. Performing the actions is very intuitive, so don't be afraid and try them out.

2.2.2 Modifying the registration form

In the following example, you will learn how to modify the registration form used on the logon page. For the purpose of this example, we will want the **Middle name** field to be specified by users on registration.

The registration form is displayed using the **Custom registration form** web part. This web part enables user registration based on an **alternative form** of the **CMS_User** system table. For more information about the Alternative forms concept, please refer to the <u>Module Alternative forms</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. Sign in to **Site Manager** (login *administrator* with blank password by default). Go to **Development -** > **System tables** and choose to **Edit** (**S**) the **User** (CMS_User) system table.

CMS Site Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Licenses Support	
Development Categories CSS stylesheets			tem table			
Countries		Actions (Class display	name 🔺	Class name	Table name
Custom tables			Ecommerce - -		ecommerce.customer	COM_Customer
····🎯 Document types ···· 🛜 E-mail templates			Ecommerce - Ecommerce -		ecommerce.order	COM_Order COM_OrderItem
······································				Shopping cart	ecommerce.shoppingcart	COM_ShoppingCart
🛃 Modules		Sa 6	Ecommerce -	Shopping cart item	ecommerce.shoppingcartitem	COM_ShoppingCartSKU
Notifications Page layouts		S E	Ecommerce -	SKU	ecommerce.sku	COM_SKU
- 4 Page templates		S 0) Jroup		Community.Group	Community_Group
Relationship names	5		Newsletter - S	ubscriber	newsletter.subscriber	Newsletter_Subscriber
🌐 System tables 🍋 Tag groups		_ ب	Jser		cms.user	CMS_User
Time zones		Va (Jser - Setting	S	cms.usersettings	CMS_UserSettings

2. Switch to the **Alternative forms** tab. Choose to **Edit** (\searrow) the **Registration form** alternative form, which is the one currently used on the logon page. As you can see, the other alternative forms are used for user profile displaying and editing.

CMS Site Manager							
Sites Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings Development	Licenses Support					
Development ∳ Categories	System table properties						
of CSS stylesheets of Countries	System tables > User						
	Fields Queries Alternative forms						
····∰ Custom tables ·····@ Document types ····??? E-mail templates	Create new form						
Form controls	Display name: LIKE						
🔤 🔲 Page layouts	Actions Display name Code	name					
- 🥞 Page templates	💊 样 Display profile 🛛 Displa	vProfile					
	💊 样 Edit profile EditPro	ofile					
🔭 Tag groups	📃 💊 样 Edit profile (Community) EditPro	ofileCommunity					
- 👩 Time zones 	💊 样 Edit profile (MyDesk) EditPro	ofileMyDesk					
Web part containers	Registration form Regist	rationForm					
🔐 Web parts							

3. Switch to the **Fields** tab. This is where you can define which fields of the **User** system table will be displayed in the form. Select the **MiddleName** field from the list on the left and check the **Display attribute in the editing form** check-box. Enter the following details:

- Field caption: Middle name
- Field type: Text box

Click OK.

CMS Site Manager								Switch to CMS D	
CINIS Sile Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Developme	ent Licenses	Support		Switch to CMS D	<u>esk</u>
 Development Categories CSS stylesheets Countries Cultures Cutures Custom tables Form controls Inline controls Notifications Page layouts Page templates System tables Tag groups Time zones Web part containes Web templates Workflows 		System tables System tables Alternative fo General Fit UserID UserID UserNam FirstName MiddleNe LastName FullName Email UserPass Preferredl UserISdi UserISdi UserISdi UserISat UserISat UserISat UserISat		de iode istrator iat	Display attr Field Default visibil Visibility contr Allow user to visibility: Field caption: Field type: Field description:	ity: rol: change field	dting form Display to all Visibility (drop down list) Middle name Text box		

4. Switch to the **Layout** tab. This is where you can define the layout of the form. Right-click the line with the FirstName controls. From the context menu, choose **Row -> Insert row after**. Select **MiddleName** from the **Available fields** list and use the **Insert label**, **Insert input** and **Insert validation label** buttons below to insert the label, input and validation controls into the new table row. The result should look as in the following screenshot.

Click Save.



5. If you go to the live site now and open the **Logon page**, you should see the modified version of the alternative form, just as in the screenshot below.





Further steps: You have learned how to modify the registration alternative form. The same way, you can add other fields to the form according to your needs. You may also try creating a completely new alternative form and using it for registration. The new alternative form needs to be specified in the **Alternative form** property of the **Custom registration form** web part. You can find a step-by-step tutorial on how to do this in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Membership and User registration -> Creating a custom registration form</u>.

2.2.3 Modifying user profiles

You can define which information will be displayed on users' public profiles. In the following example, you will learn how to add the User ID field to the public profiles.

User public profiles display information from the **CMS_User** system table using an alternative form. In our case, it is the **Display profile** alternative form. We will have to modify the alternative form to achieve the required functionality. For more information about the Alternative forms concept, please refer to the <u>Module Alternative forms</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

- 1. Sign in to Site Manager (login administrator with blank password by default). Go to Development -
- > System tables and choose to Edit () the User (CMS_User) system table.

CMS Site Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Licenses	Support	
Development		🗒 Sys	tem table	S			
Countries		Actions (Class display	name 🔺	Class nar	ne	Table name
		Sa 6	Ecommerce -	Customer	ecommer	ce.customer	COM_Customer
🕞 Document types		Sa 6	Ecommerce -	Order	ecommer	ce.order	COM_Order
E-mail templates		S E	Ecommerce -	Order item	ecommer	ce.orderitem	COM_OrderItem
		S E	Ecommerce -	Shopping cart	ecommer	ce.shoppingcart	COM_ShoppingCart
🚭 Modules		S E	Ecommerce -	Shopping cart item	ecommer	ce.shoppingcartitem	COM_ShoppingCartSKU
🛛 🐻 Notifications		S E	Ecommerce -	SKU	ecommer	ce.sku	COM_SKU
····[] Page layouts ·····		S (Group		Commun	ity.Group	Community_Group
Relationship name	es	<u></u>	Newsletter - S	Bubscriber	newslette	r.subscriber	Newsletter_Subscriber
System tables		S 1	Jser		cms.user		CMS_User
		N 1	Jser - Setting	s	cms.user	settings	CMS_UserSettings
Time zones							

2. Switch to the Alternative forms tab and choose to Edit () the Display profile alternative form.

CMS Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings Development Licenses Support
Sites	Administration Settings Development Licenses Support
Development	System table properties
🖓 Categories	
	System tables Vser
- Ocuntries	
🍘 Cultures	Fields Queries Alternative forms
🖓 🔠 Custom tables	
🕬 🍋 Document types	🛃 Create new form
🖂 E-mail templates	
🛛 🔙 Inline controls	Display name: LIKE 💌
	Show
🛛 🜆 Notifications	
🔤 🔲 Page layouts	Actions Display name 🔺 Code name
🥞 Page templates	Sk Display profile DisplayProfile
System tables	Sector Se
資 Tag groups	💊 💥 Edit profile (Community) EditProfileCommunity
	💊 💥 Edit profile (MyDesk) EditProfileMyDesk
····• UI cultures	S 🎗 Registration form RegistrationForm
🔲 🔲 Web part containers	

3. Switch to the **Fields** tab. Select the **UserID** field from the list on the right and check the **Display attribute in the editing form** check-box. Click **OK** to save the changes.

CMS Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings Development Licenses Support	<u>Switch to CMS</u>
Development Categories CSS stylesheets Countries Cultures Cultures Custom tables Count types Count t	System table properties System tables > User Fields Queries Alternative forms Alternative forms > Display profile General Fields	
Form controls Form controls Modules Form controls Modules Form controls Form controls Form controls Form controls Form controls Form containers Form	UserID Database UserName Attribute name: FirstName Attribute name: MiddleName Attribute type: LastName Attribute type: FullName Attribute size: Email Attribute size: UserPassword Attribute default value: PreferredUlCultureCode Attribute default value: UserIsEditor Attribute default value:	
Web templates	UserlsGlobalAdministrator UserlsExternal UserPasswordFormat UserCreated LastLogon UserStartingAliasPath UserGUID UserLastModified UserLastLogonInfo UserLastLogonInfo UserLastLoidfiedfied UserLastLoidfied UserLa	× ×

4. Now we need to modify the layout of the profile, so switch to the **Layout** tab. Place the cursor in the first column of the empty line below the FullName line and choose **UserID** from the **Available fields** list on the right.

Click the **Insert label** button. Select the text that was entered and make it bold so that it looks the same as the other labels. Place the cursor to the second column of the line and click the **Insert input** button.

The result should look as in the screenshot below. Finally, click Save to save the changes.

CMS Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings Development Licenses Support	Switch to CMS Desi
Development Categories CSS stylesheets Cultures Cultures Custom tables E-mail templates Form controls Modules Modules Development	System table properties System tables > User Fields Queries Alternative forms Alternative forms > Display profile General Fields Layout Save	
 Notifications Page layouts Page templates Relationship names Tag groups Time zones UI cultures Web part containers Web parts Web templates Workflows 	Use custom form layout Generate table layout B I U ASC X X ² II = II IF	Available fields: User/D UserName FullName Email UserCreated UserNickName UserAvatarID
	\$\$input:UserName\$\$ \$\$input:UserBadgeID\$\$ \$\$input:UserBadgeID\$\$ \$\$input:UserBadgeID\$\$ \$\$input:UserID\$\$ \$\$input:UserID\$\$ \$\$input:UserID\$\$ \$\$input:UserID\$\$ \$\$input:UserID\$\$ \$\$input:UserID\$\$ \$\$input:UserCreated\$\$ \$}	UserBadgeID UserActivityPoints UserBlogComments Insert label Insert input Insert validation label Insert submit button Insert visibility control

5. Now if you switch to the live site and sign in as some of the sample users (e.g. *David* with blank password), you should see the UserID field present on his profile, as highlighted in the screenshot below.





Further steps: You have learned how to modify the user public profile. This way, you can add any other field to the profile. You may also try creating your own alternative form and use it for displaying user profiles. The new alternative form needs to be specified in the **Form name** property of the **User public profile** web part. You may also try modifying the **Edit profile (Community)** alternative form the same way. Like this, you can allow users to modify some additional details of their profile on the profile editing page.

2.2.4 Enabling public profile fields visibility controls

You can let users specify who will see particular details on their public profiles. By default, this is enabled for the e-mail field, as you can see in the screenshot below. Using the highlighted radiobuttons, users can make their e-mail address visible to:

- Nobody nobody can see the e-mail address
- All everyone including anonymous site visitors can see the e-mail address
- Site members only authenticated site users can see the e-mail address
- Friends only authenticated site users who are among the user's friends can see the e-mail address



My profile

			Shortcuts
Personal settings Change	a password Notifications		My profile Edit my profile
Username: Full name: E-mail: Display my e-mail to:	Mia Mia Lee mia.lee@mydomainXY.com ○ Nobody ○ All ⊙ Site members ○ Friends		My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog Send message
Nickname:	Mia		Sign out
Nickname:			
Signature:	#-Ma-Ma-Mia-#		My blogs You currently do not have any blogs.
Messaging notification e-mail:			My groups
Time zone:	(none)	~	Asian travellers This is a group of
	Kusannin		Asia-based travellers. If you are living in Asia, please register to the group. It is a great chance for

In the following example, you will learn how to let users set the visibility of their full name.

User profiles display data stored in the **CMS_User** system table based on the specified alternative form. In our case, it is the **Edit profile (Community)** alternative form. We will have to modify it to achieve the required functionality. For more information about the Alternative forms concept, please refer to the <u>Module Alternative forms</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. Sign in to **Site Manager** (login *administrator* with blank password by default). Go to **Development -** > **System tables** and choose to **Edit** (**\sqrtheta**) the **User** (CMS_User) system table.

CMS Site Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Licenses Sup	port	
Development		🗒 Sys	tem table	S			
Countries		Actions (Class display	name 🔺	Class name		Table name
Custom tables		S	Ecommerce -	Customer	ecommerce.cu	ustomer	COM_Customer
🗧 Document types		S	Ecommerce -	Order	ecommerce.or	der	COM_Order
🖂 E-mail templates		S	Ecommerce -	Order item	ecommerce.or	deritem	COM_OrderItem
······································		S	Ecommerce -	Shopping cart	ecommerce.sh	noppingcart	COM_ShoppingCart
🛃 Modules		S	Ecommerce -	Shopping cart item	ecommerce.sh	noppingcartitem	COM_ShoppingCartSKU
🔚 Notifications		S	Ecommerce -	SKU	ecommerce.sk	κu	COM_SKU
[] Page layouts 		S	Group		Community.Gr	oup	Community_Group
Relationship name	es		Newsletter - S	lubscriber	newsletter.sub	scriber	Newsletter_Subscriber
System tables			User		cms.user		CMS_User
Tag groups			User - Setting	s	cms.usersettir	ngs	CMS_UserSettings
- 🚱 Time zones - 🎲 UI cultures							

2. Switch to the **Alternative forms** tab and choose to **Edit** (**\Science**) the **Edit profile (Community)** alternative form.

CMS Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings Development Licenses Support						
∍. Development % Categories	System table properties						
	System tables + User						
	Fields Queries Alternative forms						
	Create new form						
Form controls	Display name: LIKE						
🖟 Notifications	Actions Display name Code name						
- 🦂 Page templates - 📲 Relationship names	Na 🗱 Display profile DisplayProfile						
… 🗐 System tables … 🍋 Tag groups	City control c						
👩 Time zones 🎲 UI cultures	S K Edit profile (MyDesk) EditProfileMyDesk						
Web part containers	💊 💥 Registration form RegistrationForm						

3. Switch to the **Fields** tab and select **FullName** from the list on the left. Check the **Allow user to** change field visibility check box and switch the value of the **Visibility control** drop-down list to **Visibility (radio buttons - horizontal)**. Click **OK** to save the changes.

CMS Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings	Development	Licenses Support		<u>Switch to CMS Desk</u>
Development Categories SCS stylesheets Countries Cultures Cultures Cultures Cultures Cultures Cultures Cul	System table p	roperties ative forms profile (Commun			
 Notifications Page layouts Page templates Relationship names System tables Tag groups Time zones UI cultures Web parts Web parts Web templates Workflows 	UserID UserIName FirstName MiddleName LastName Email UserPassword PreferredCultureCod UserEnabled UserIsElabalAdminis UserIsElabalAdminis UserIsElabalAdminis UserIsElabalAdminis UserIsExternal UserIsExternal UserCreated LastLogon UserCreated LastLogon UserCatthodified UserLastModified UserLastLogonInfo UserIsHidden	e Field ode Field strator Field at Field strator Field at Field Fi	Display attribute in the e d fault visibility: ibility control: ow user to change field ibility: eld caption: eld type: eld description:	Display to all Visibility (radio buttons - horizontal)	

4. Switch to the **Layout** tab. Place the cursor to the FullName line, right-click and from the context menu, select **Row -> Insert Row After**. Type **'Display full name to:**' into the first column of the new line. Then place the cursor into the second column, choose FullName from the **Available fields** list and click the **Insert visibility control** button. The result should look as in the screenshot below.

CSS stylesheets	System table p					
	tern tables > User ts Queries Alterna ernative forms > Edit neral Fields Layou Bave Use custom form lay Generate table layo	tive forms profile (Communit	y)			
	■ Source (), ■ ■ B I <u>U</u> ARC	 > ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ > ×2 ×2 = = = > > Format > 	(= 1) 	Font Out:UserNai	■ ■ • Size • •	Available fields: UserName Email UserNickName UserSignature UserGender UserGender UserCateOfBirth
	Display full name to:			ibility:FullN		Insert label
	\$\$label:Email\$\$ Display my e-mail to:			ibility:Email\$\$	\$\$validation:Email\$\$	
				out:UserNic		Insert input
	\$\$label:UserNickNa	ne\$\$			erNickName\$\$	Insert validation label
			¢¢ine	ut:LleorQia	naturatt	Insert submit button

Click **Save** to save the changes.

5. Now if you go to the live site and sign in as some of the sample users (e.g. **David** with blank password) and go to the profile editing section (click **Edit my profile** in the **Shortcuts** menu), you should be able to choose the Full name field visibility, as shown in the screenshot below.

Home Blogs	News Media Forums Groups Members Examples	Search
My profile		
,		Shortcuts
Personal settings Cl	hange password Notifications	My profile Edit my profile
Username:	David	My messages
Full name:	David Silver	My friends My invitations
Display full name to:	Nobody ○ All ○ Site members ○ Friends	Create a new group
E-mail:	david.silver@mydomainXY.com	<u>Create a new blog</u> Sign out
Display my e-mail to:	○ Nobody ○ All ③ Site members ○ Friends	
Nickname:	David	My blogs
	* * D-a-v-i-d * *	You currently do not have any blogs.
Signature:		My groups
		Czech Republic fans This group is intended
Messaging notification e	e-mail:	for people who are
Time zone:	(none)	Republic. Czech Republic residents, travellers who have
		vi

<u>Further steps</u>: You have learned how to let site users specify who will see their full name. The same way as described above, visibility controls can be added to any other field of their profiles.

2.2.5 Registration approval and double opt-in

By default, users are signed-in to the site and their user account becomes active immediately after successful registration. However, the two options highlighted in the following screenshot can be enabled in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Membership**. By enabling these options, you can include additional steps in the registration procedure.

CMS Site Manager Sites Administration	n Settings	Development	Licenses	Support	Swi	tch to CMS Desk	User:
Site: (global)	Nettir	ngs					
Settings Web site Content management	<u>Jave</u>	181	se settings to		the local site settings. Please select the site to see or ch	ance the site setti	inas.
	Administra Monitor onl	tor's e-mail	,	0	admin@mydomainXY.com	-	
		e users in datal	base	0			
E-mails] Avatars Membership		ine users (mini Jser names	utes)	0	1 admin;root,administrator;sysadmin;sa		
Sa Community D Windows LiveID Ca Web analytics	-	n requires e-m n requires adm					
	Delete non Enable use	-activated user er counts	after (days)	@ @	5		
	Unique e-n <u>Export thes</u>			0			

36

Registration requires e-mail confirmation

If checked, newly registered users will receive confirmation e-mail to the e-mail address specified on registration. This e-mail contains a confirmation link that needs to be clicked in order to activate the account. The e-mail is based on the **Membership - Registration** e-mail template.

Confirm your registration to Message (HTML) _ = = x							
Message Ad	id-Ins				0		
Reply Reply Forward to All Respond	Delete Move to Create Folder × Rule A Actions	Other Actions ~ Block Not Ju Sender Junk E-mail		Mark as Unread	Send to OneNote OneNote		
From: no-reply@my To: Petr Penicka Cc:	/domainXY.com			Sent:	Wed 1/7/2009 5:11 PM		
Subject: Confirm you	ir registration to				_		
Please click on the li	ticoCMS_0107/CMSP	orateSite. hat you wish to activate <u>ages/UserRegistration.as</u>		ob7-a0f7-459c-8e48-			

After clicking the link, a special page will be opened in user's web browser, displaying the following message:

Your registration has been approved. Now you are able to login using your username and password. <u>Click here to continue</u>.

The link at the end of the message will redirect the user to the title page of the web site. The user can then log in using the registration details received in the e-mail.
Registration requires administrator's approval

If this option is enabled, users will not be able to sign-in immediately after registration. Their registration will have to be approved by site administrator. At this point, users will receive an e-mail based on the **Membership - Registration waiting for approval** e-mail template. You can see the default version of the e-mail in the screenshot below.

	🚽 🤊 Ü 🍝 🔇	¥) =	Registra	tion information - Mes	sage (HTML)			-	ΞX	
	Message Ad	ld-Ins							۲	
Reply	Reply Forward to All Respond	Delete Move to Folder ~ Acti	Rule Actions *	Block Safe Lists × Block Sender Junk E-mail	Categorize Follow Up + Options		Find Related * Select * Find	Send to OneNote OneNote		
From: To:	no-reply@my Petr Penicka	domainXY.com					Sent:	Wed 1/7/2009	5:37 PM	
Cc: Subject:		information								
Than	Subject: Registration information Thank you for registering at our site CorporateSite. Your registration must be approved by administrator.									
Kegi	stration details:									
	name: <u>petr.peni</u> word: 123456	cka@kentico.co	<u>om</u>							

In case that the option is enabled, the **Waiting for approval** tab will be displayed in **Site Manager** -> **Administration** -> **Users**. On this tab, site administrators can **Approve** () or **Reject** () users' registration.

CMS Site Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Licenses S	upport	Switch to CMS De	<u>sk</u> User:	Global Administrator	Sign out
Administration Avatars Badges Baldwords Banned IPs Banned IPs Email queue Banned IPs Recycle Bin Recycle Bin Roles Scheduled tasks System System Users Web farm	Jites	Users Waiting Users Waiting Waiting All - A - B - C - User name: Full name: E-mail Address: Nickname: In roles: Not in roles: Search Display simplifie	for approva for approva D - E - E - LIKE LIKE LIKE LIKE AII AII AII	Mass e-mail	M On-line users K - L - M - № - Q	- <u>P</u> - <u>Q</u> -!	<u>8 - 8 - I - U - Y - W</u>]]] Select			2
		Approve all	selected u User name		eject all selecto Full name	ed users Email		Nickname	Created	Enabled
				a@kentico.cor			nicka@kentico.com	- actor idine	1/7/2009 5:33:38 PM	
									Items per page	e: 25 💌

After the administrator's approval, users receive another e-mail, confirming that their account has been approved and can be used. The e-mail is based on the **Membership - Registration approved** e-mail template. You can see the default appearance of the e-mail in the screenshot below.

	🚽 🤊 U 🔺	*			Registr	ation ap	proved -	Mess	age (HTML	.)			_	= X
	Message Ad	id-Ins												۲
Reply	Reply Forward to All Respond	Delete	Move to Folder *		Other Actions *	Sender	😵 Safe r 🖂 Not J nk E-mail		Categorize	Follow Up +	Mark as Unread	 A Find A Related ▼ Select ▼ Find 	Send to OneNote OneNote	
From: To:	no-reply@my Petr Penicka	/domainX\	Y.com									Sent:	Wed 1/7/200	9 5:42 PM
Cc		approve	d											
Subject: Registration approved Your registration has been approved by administrator. Now you are able to login using your username and password.														

Enabling both options

In case that you enable both of the options mentioned above, e-mail with the confirmation link will be sent first. After user's confirmation, registration will have to be approved by the administrator.



If you have one or both of the options enabled, it is important to set the **Redirect to URL** property of the registration web part properly. This means that users should not be redirected to any page displaying information about their user account (just as the **Members -> Profile** page on the sample Community Starter site). Because the account is not active yet (it is waiting for e-mail activation or approval), such page would display an error message, which might be misleading for the users.

Further steps: You have learned how to enable registration approval and double opt-in. At this point, you may want to try enabling the options and registering to the site to see how they work in practice. In this case, it will be necessary to set up the SMTP server in **Site Manager -> Settings -> E-mails** in order for the e-mails to be sent correctly. You may also want to go to **Site Manager -> Development -** > **E-mail templates** and modify some of the notification e-mail templates mentioned in the text above.

2.2.6 Windows Live ID

2.2.6.1 Overview

Windows LiveID is a **single sign-on service** provided and maintained by Microsoft. By integrating LiveID into your web site, you can allow site visitors to log in to your web site using their LiveID login and password. Even unregistered users can log in using their LiveID, in which case a new user account will be created automatically based on their LiveID account.

The following diagram shows how the process of LiveID login works.



For this to work on your site, you have to do the following things:

- 1. Register your web site at https://msm.live.com/app to learn how to do it click here
- 2. Setup Kentico CMS LiveID support to learn how to do it click here
- 3. Add the LiveID web part to your site info here

2.2.6.2 Registering your application

40

To enable the LiveID log on for your site, you must register your web site at the following address: <u>https://msm.live.com/app</u>. Click the **Register an application** link in the left menu, you will be redirected to the application registration page. You have to enter the following details:

- Application Name this is simply an identifying name of your web application used in the LiveID system and has no effect on functionality
- Return URL enter a URL in the following format: http://<yourdomain>/CMSPages/liveidlogin. aspx where <yourdomain> should be replaced with the domain name of your site entered in the Domain name field
- Domain name enter the fully qualified domain name of your web site
- Secret key enter some key that will be used to encrypt data transferred between your web site and the LiveID server; be sure to remember this key as you will have to enter it in Kentico CMS settings
- Application verifier required it is recommended to choose 0



When you're finished, retype the CAPTCHA, agree with terms of use and click the **Submit** button. You will be displayed with the following message, showing you the **Application ID**. You will use this ID later in Kentico CMS settings.



2.2.6.3 Settings

LiveID settings are located in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Windows LiveID**. Before you start making the settings, make sure you have the right site selected using the **Site** drop-down list at the top left part of the page.

- Application ID identifier of your web site; you were given this ID when registering your web site to LiveID
- Application secret secret code that will be used for encryption of messages transferred between your web site and the LiveID server; you entered this key when registering your web site to LiveID
- Security algorithm algorithm used for encryption of messages transferred between your web site and the LiveID server; it is recommended to use *wsignin1.0*
- Assign new users to roles new users registered via LiveID login will be assigned to these roles
- **Required user data page** alias path to a page containing the 'Required LiveID user data' web part; if entered, then when a new LiveID user logs in to the site, her user account is not created automatically, but she is required to enter some additional data (or merge with an existing account) using the web part

CMS Site Manager Sites Administration	Settings Development	Lice	nses Support		Switch to CMS Desk	User:
Site: (global)	🔩 Settings					
_ Settings	Save Neset thes	e sett	ings to default			
	These settings are global, th	iey ca	in be overriden b	/ the local site settings. Please select	the site to see or change the site sett	ings.
Security	Application ID	2	0000000040003	107		
	Application secret	0	abcdefghijklmr	ор		
Administration	Security algorithm	2	wsignin1.0			
	Assign new users to roles	0	CMSLivelDUse	ers;RegisteredUse Select		
Avatars	Required user data page	2				
- 🧟 Membership						
Windows LiveID	Export these settings					

2.2.6.4 Adding the sign in button

After registering your web site at msm.live.com and making the necessary settings, you only need to place the **Membership -> Windows LiveID** web part to your site. This web part works fine without any additional settings and can be placed on any page of your web site.

In the following example, you will learn how to add the Windows LiveID web part to the sample **Community Starter site**. We will add the web part to the **zoneTopMembership** web part zone of the master page, next to the sign-in link. Like this, the LiveID sign-in button will always be displayed, no matter which particular page is currently displayed.

1. Sign in to **CMS Desk** (login *administrator* with blank password by default). Select the master page (the root of the content tree) and switch to the **Design** tab.

2. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the zoneTopMembership web part zone.



3. In the **Web part selection** dialog which pops-up, choose **Membership -> Windows LiveID** and click **OK**. The web part properties dialog pops-up. As mentioned above, no properties need to be set, so just click **OK**.

4. The web part is now placed on the master page. The web part itself is not visible now, but it is represented by the blue rectangle labeled **WindowsLiveID**. If you log-off now, you should see the web part on the page and it should be fully functional.



Further steps: You have learned how to add the Windows LiveID sign-in functionality to your web site. In some cases, you may want the users to provide some additional details on registration via Windows LiveID. In this case, you would use the **LiveID required data** web part. A detailed description of this web part and the way it can be used can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Membership</u> and User registration -> Windows LiveID -> Available web parts.

2.3 Groups

2.3.1 Current functionality

1. Go to the live site and sign-in as **Kelly** with blank password. Click **Groups** in the main menu. You will be redirected to the **Groups** title page.

The **Your groups** section of this page displays all groups where the current user is a member. The **Recently added groups** section displays all groups on the site. If you click a group name or avatar, you will be redirected to the group's profile page. Enter the **African travellers** group profile.



2. You can see the group profile page now, just as in the screenshot below. The page has the following sections:

- Group profile basic information about the group its avatar, name, description, type of access and date of creation
- Group announcements this is a message board where group administrators can leave important group-related messages
- Latest in forums displays latest posts in the group's forums
- Most recent pages displays latest articles in the group pages section
- Shortcuts menu the following group-related actions are offered in the menu:
 - Create a new group can be used for creating new groups
 - Leave the group by clicking this link, the current user leaves the currently displayed group so that she is no longer a member of it
 - Invite to a group by clicking this link, group members can send invitations to the currently displayed group to other site members or via e-mail
- Group links menu this menu offers links to all sections of the currently displayed group:

44

- Home group profile page
- **Pages** group pages section with articles related to the group's field of interest, added by group members directly on the live site
- Media group's media libraries where various types of files can be stored
- **Members** page displaying a list of all members of the group; after clicking a user, you will be redirected to her public profile; right-clicking the users' avatars displays a context menu with other possible actions
- Forums group's discussion forums
- Group administrators displays administrators of the current group; right-clicking the avatars displays a context menu with possible actions
- **Recent members** displays the latest group members; right-clicking the avatars displays a context menu with possible actions

Try browsing the sections and using the actions listed above. The site was designed to be very intuitive to work with, therefore you should not encounter any problems playing around with it.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples			Search
Groups	Group profile		Czech	Republic	fans				Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile	
			who have vis	ited it and those	who are plannin	g to do so are all m	n Republic. Czech Rep ore than welcome to	ublic residents, travellers join this group.	My messages My friends My invitations <u>Create a new group</u> Leave the group <u>Invite to group</u> <u>Create a new blog</u> <u>Sign out</u>	<u>.</u>
Group a	nnouncer	nents							Group links	
improve gr	s David Silver a oup content. 9 8:13:07 PM	nd I'm the a	dministrator of	this group. Please	e send me an em	nail or private mess	age if you have any (questions or ideas on how to	Home Pages Media Members Forums	
								Report abuse	Group adminis	strators
	oud to annound 09 8:29:39 AM	-	jroup has alrea	dy two members!				Report abuse	Gender: Male Age: 21	
Latest ir	n forums								Recent memb	
pr. the c									Kelly Gender: Fem	nale
Hi, I was in	Czech repub Prague for 5 d 10/28/2008 (lays last wee		onestly say it is or	ne of the most ir	nteresting and mes	merising places I've e	ver seen in Europe.	Age: 26	
<u>The Czec</u>	<u>ch republic</u>									
	Zech Republic 10/25/2008 (I							
Most re	cent pages	6								
Discover	the Czech R	epublic								
Discover will be su	the Czech Rep rprised at what	ublic - a sma t a variety o	f places to see	and things to do	there is. Don't m	hiss out on any of t	he country's natural (what your interests are, you wonders, historic landmarks rld's cultural heritage.		
	r a nice day ful ed in this count		ons, why not sp	end the evening	in one of the ty	pical Czech pubs, c	lrinking some of the b	est beers in the world that		

3. If you want to become a member of some other group, you can do it on the **Groups** title page. Right click the group you want to join. A context menu appears. Select the **Join the group** command.



A pop-up window appears, asking you if you really want to join the group. Click **Join**. Depending on the group settings, you will either become a group member immediately, or your request will have to be approved by the group administrator.

🖉 Join the group Webpage Dialog	×
🚜 Join the group	
Do you want to join European travellers?	
Join Cancel	
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_40/CMSModules/Groups/CMSPage 😒 Local intranet	:

Alternatively, you can also join a group by clicking the **Join the group** command in the **Shortcuts** menu when viewing a group profile.



4. You have just learned what the group member can see and do in this section. Now let's switch to the **group administrator's** point of view. Log-off the site and sign-in again as **David** with blank password. David is the **administrator of the Czech Republic fans group**, so view this group's profile the same way as you did above with Kelly.

The first thing you will probably notice is that there is the **Leave message** section below the **Group announcements** message board. Because David is the admin of this group, he can leave announcements. Try leaving one.

Leave me	ssage
Name:	David
Your URL:	http://www.mydomainXY.com
Your e-mail:	david.silver@mydomainXY.com
Message:	Hi everybody, I'm just sending a testing message to learn how this Group announcements message board works.
	Add

After clicking the **Add** button, you should see the message present on the board:

Group announcements

<u>David</u>

Hi all, My name is David Silver and I'm the administrator of this group. Please send me an email or private message if you have any questions or ideas on how to improve group content. 1/5/2009 8:13:07 PM

	<u>Edit Delete Reject</u> <u>Report abuse</u>
David	
We are proud to announce that our group has already two members!	
1/12/2009 8:29:39 AM	
	<u>Edit Delete Reject</u> <u>Report abuse</u>
David	

Hi everybody, I'm just sending a testing message to learn how this Group announcements message board works. 3/10/2009 5:40:39 PM

Edit Delete Reject Report abuse

5. You might have also noticed the Manage the group link in the Shortcuts menu.

Shortcuts
<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile
<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> <u>My invitations</u>
Create a new group
Manage the group
<u>Create a new blog</u>
<u>Sign out</u>

Click it, you will be redirected to the group management section, which is also available only for group administrators. Try going through all the tabs and changing some settings. As this on-site group management interface is identical to the groups management interface in CMS Desk, you can refer to <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Groups -> Editing a group</u> for a detailed description and explanation of all the available settings. Other topics of the Module Groups chapter can be used as a source of other detailed information on the Groups module.

Groups 🕨 Czech Republic fans 🕨 Management	
General Security Members Roles For	ms Media libraries Message boards Polls
Description:	This group is intended for people who are interested in the Czech Republic. Czech Republic residents, <u>travellers</u> who have visited it and those who are planning to do so are all more than welcome to join this group.
Avatar:	Upload: Browse Select pre-defined avatar
Approve members:	 Any site member can join Only approved members can join Only approved members can join except for invited members
Content access:	 Anybody can view the content Site members can view the content Only group members can view the content
Notify group admins when a user joins/leaves	
Notify group admins on pending members:	
Created by: Approved by:	administrator administrator
	OK

2.3.2 Creating a new group

New groups can be created two ways:

- Site users can create new groups on the live site using the **Create a new group** link in the **Shortcuts** menu. This is the most common way and most of the groups on most sites are created this way.
- Alternatively, if you want to pre-define a group manually from the administration interface, this can be done in **CMS Desk -> Tools -> Groups**.

In the following example, you will learn about both ways of creating groups:

1. Go to the live site and sign in as **David** with blank password. Click the **Create a new group** link in the **Shortcuts** menu.

Shortcuts	
<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile	
<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> My invitations	
<u>Create a new group</u>	
Create a new blog	
<u>Sign out</u>	

- 2. Enter the following details into the **Create new group** form:
- Group name name of the group displayed on the live site and in the administration interface
- Description text describing the group, displayed in the list of groups
- Approve members determines if users can join the group with or without group admin's approval; the last options allows invited members to join without the approval
- Content access determines who can view content of the group pages

Click **OK**. You will receive a message saying that your group has been created, but needs administrator's approval.

Home Blog	gs News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples		Search
Create nev	v group							
By entering the deta group's field of inter						roup a name an	d description according to the	Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile
Group name:	Kentico CMS fa	ans						<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> My invitations
	Join us if	you love	this outst	anding CM	s.			<u>Create a new blog</u> Sign out
Description:								
								Recent groups
Approve members:		l members can						This is a group of travellers living in Africa. If you are one of them, please register to the group. It is a
	 Only approved Anybody can v 			wited members				great chance f Australian travellers
Content access:	O Site members (Only group me							This is a group of Australian travellers. If you are one of them, please
	ОК	h						register to the group. It is a great chance for you
								European travellers This is a group of Europe-based travellers.

3. Let's switch to the administrator's perspective now. Sign in to **CMS Desk** (use login *administrator* with blank password) and go to **Tool -> Groups**. You should see the new group present in the list, with the **Approved** column saying **No**. Click the **Approve** (\checkmark) icon. From now on, the group is approved and published on the live site.

CMS Desk				
	Content My Des	k Tools	Administration	
 Tools Abuse report BizForms Blogs Booking system Content staging Custom tables File import 	a		LIKE (all) Search	×
Servems Groups Media libraries Message boards Sewsletter Polls Reporting Web Analytics			American travellers Asian travellers Australian travellers Czech Republic fans European travellers	Approved Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes
	1 🔪 🌡	رک ه	Kentico CMS fans	No

4. Now we will try the second way how groups can be created - pre-defining a group in the administration interface. Our group will be named **ASP.NET Developers**. At first, we will have to go to **CMS Desk -> Content** and create the group pages section. Select **Groups -> Template** from the content tree and copy the document under the Group pages node.



5. Select the new **Template** document that was copied under the **Group pages** node. Switch to the **Form** tab and change its name to **ASP_NET_Developers**. Click **Save**.

CMS Desk Cont	ent My Desk	Tools Administration
	Up Down	Edit OPreview OLive site Ist
🖃 🌍 Community Site		Page Design Form Properties
- E Home		
🕒 - 📄 Blogs		_ <mark>] Save</mark> _ <mark> Spell check</mark>
连 📄 News		
📄 Media		
🗓 📄 Forums		
🚊 🦷 📑 Groups		Document name: ASP_NET_Developers
📄 Management		Teaser image: Upload: Browse
📄 Media		
- 📄 Media list		Publish from: 📴 <u>Now</u>
- 📄 Members		(V)
📄 Profile		Publish to: 📴 <u>Now</u>
- 📄 Access		
- 📄 Forums		
- 📄 Create		

6. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab and change the **Document alias** also to **ASP_NET_Developers**. Click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	<u>Switch to Site Manager</u>
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit OPreview OLive site Ist	
🖃 🕙 Community Site	Page Design Form Properties	
🖶 - 📄 Blogs	General _	
⊕] News] Media	URLs	
er le Forums	Template Path	
🖃 🥃 Groups	Metadata Document alias: ASP_NET_Developers	1
📄 Media	Categories Document URL path:	,
📄 Media list	Menu 🗹 Use custom URL path	
Members	Workflow	
····]=) Profile ····]=) Access	Versions Extended properties URL extensions:	
📄 Forums	Related docs Track campaign:	
📄 Create 📄 Template	Linked docs	

7. As we have the group pages section prepared, we can proceed to creating of the group itself. Go to **Tools -> Groups** and click the **New group** link at the top of the page.

🎎 Group	S
🤐 <u>New group</u>]
Group name:	
Status:	(all)
	Search

8. The **New group** form appears. Compared to the on-site form described in step 2, this one contains some additional fields. We won't describe all of them now, you can find detailed descriptions in the context help (accessible via the green '?' icon at the top right corner of the page). Enter the following details:

- Display name ASP.NET Developers
- Code name ASP_NET_Developers
- Description Building web sites using this Microsoft technology? Join us!!!
- Group pages location /Group-pages/ASP_NET_Developers
- Avatar click Select pre-defined avatar and pick one
- Approve members Any site member can join
- Content access Anybody can view the content
- Notify group admins when a user joins/leaves leave unchecked
- Notify group admins on pending members leave unchecked

Click OK.

🚑 New group	
Groups + New group	
Display name:	ASP.NET Developers
Code name:	ASP_NET_Developers
	Building web sites using this Microsoft technology? Join us!!
Description:	
Group pages location:	/Group-pages/ASP_NET_Develc Select Clear
Avatar:	Upload: Browse
	Select pre-defined avatar
Approve members:	Any site member can join Only approved members can join Only approved members can join Only approved members can join except for invited members Anybody can view the content
Content access:	 Site members can view the content Only group members can view the content
Notify group admins when a user joins/leaves:	
Notify group admins on pending members:	
	ОК

9. The group is now created. If you go to the live site now, you should see it listed in the **Groups** section, as depicted below. If you enter the group profile, all sections should be fully functional (but of course with no content).



2.3.3 Modifying the group public profile

You can define which details will be displayed on group public profiles. The process is quite similar to modifying user public profiles described <u>here</u>. In the following example, you will learn how to add the **Group ID** field to the group public profiles.

Group public profiles display information from the **Community_Group** system table using an alternative form. In our case, it is the **Display profile** alternative form. We will have to modify the alternative form to achieve the required functionality. For more information about the Alternative forms concept, please refer to the <u>Module Alternative forms</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. Sign in to **Site Manager** (login *administrator* with blank password by default). Go to **Development -** > **System tables** and choose to **Edit** (**\sqrtholowsia)** the **Group** (Community_Group) system table.

CMS Site Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Licenses	Support	
- Development 		Sys	stem table	S			
Countries () Cultures		Actions	Class display	name 🔺	Class nar	ne	Table name
Custom tables		S	Ecommerce -	Customer	ecommer	ce.customer	COM_Customer
Gocument types		S	Ecommerce -	Order	ecommer	ce.order	COM_Order
🖂 E-mail templates		S	Ecommerce -	Order item	ecommer	ce.orderitem	COM_OrderItem
		S	Ecommerce -	Shopping cart	ecommer	ce.shoppingcart	COM_ShoppingCart
🖓 Modules		S	Ecommerce -	Shopping cart item	ecommer	ce.shoppingcartitem	COM_ShoppingCartSKU
🐻 Notifications			Ecommerce -	SKU	ecommer	ce.sku	COM_SKU
I Page layouts		S	Group		Commun	ity.Group	Community_Group
Relationship name	s		Newsletter - 8	Bubscriber	newslette	r.subscriber	Newsletter_Subscriber
System tables		S	User		cms.user		CMS_User
🚰 Tag groups 🔗 Time zones 🏠 UI cultures		N	User - Setting	IS	cms.user	settings	CMS_UserSettings

2. Switch to the Alternative forms tab and choose to Edit (s) the Display profile alternative form.

CMS Site Manager	Sites	Administration S	5ettings	Development	Licenses	Support
 Development 2 Categories 2 CSS stylesheets 2 Countries 2 Countries 2 Cultures 2 Custom tables 2 Document types 		System 1 System tables + Fields Queries	Group	operties ive forms		
E-mail templates Form controls Inline controls Modules		Display name:	Sho			
······································	es	Actions Displ	l ay name 4 lay profile			

3. Switch to the **Fields** tab, select **GroupID** from the list of available fields and check the **Display attribute in the editing form** check-box. Click **OK**.

CMS Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings Develo	pment Licenses Support		Switch to
	System table propert	ies		
	System tables + Group			
(a) Cultures	Fields Queries Alternative for	ms		
📲 Custom tables	Alternative forms Display profil	lo.		
- 🥪 Document types	Alemaive lonis + Display prom	10		
- 🖂 E-mail templates	General Fields Layout			
Form controls				
🔙 Inline controls 				
Notifications				
🔲 Page layouts	GroupID GroupGUID	Database		-
age templates	GroupLastModified GroupSiteID	Attribute name:	GroupID	
	GroupDisplayName	Attribute type:	Integer Number	~
Tag groups	GroupName GroupDescription	Attribute size:		
o Time zones	GroupNodeGUID	Allow empty value:		
••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	GroupApproveMembers GroupAccess	Attribute default value:		
🔲 Web part containers	GroupCreatedByUserID			
Web templates	GroupApprovedByUserID GroupAvatarID	Dsplay attribute in the e	adition form	
	GroupApproved GroupCreatedWhen		salling form	
	GroupSendJoinLeaveNotit	Field		
	GroupSendWaitingForApp GroupSecurity	Field caption:	GroupID	
	aloupsecuny	Field type:	Label	~
	Y	*		~
		_		ОК

4. Switch to the **Layout** tab. We will place the **GroupID** field above the **GroupAccess** field. Place the cursor in the line with **GroupAccess** controls, right-click and choose **Row -> Insert Row Before** from the context menu.

			Available fields:
		 ■ = = = = = = = =	GroupD GroupDisplayName GroupDescription GroupAccess GroupAvatarlD GroupSendWaitingFc
		oDisplayName\$\$	GroupSecurity
P3	auhar.Groat	יסנאנאוקאויקיט	aroupoccany
□\$\$input:GroupAvatarID\$\$	\$input:GroupDescript	tion\$\$	
\$	#1-11-C	1\$ \$\$input:GroupAccess\$\$	
\$	K Cut	Vhen\$\$ \$\$input:GroupCreatedWhen\$\$	
	Copy		Insert label
	🛍 Paste	_	Insert input
	Cell 🕨	·	Insert validation label
	Row 🕨	Insert Row Before	Insert submit button
	Column 🕨	→E Insert Row After	
	Delete Table	⇒ Delete Rows	
	Table Properties		

5. The former layout gets a bit scrambled by this action. We will need to make this right before we proceed. Select the three empty cells highlighted in the screenshot below, right-click and choose **Cell -** > **Delete Cells** from the context menu.



6. Now we have the layout as we want it, so we can proceed to adding the controls. Select **GroupID** from the **Available fields** list, place the cursor in the first empty cell and click **Insert label**. Highlight the entered text and make it bold, so that it looks the same as the other two labels. Place the cursor in the second empty cell and click **Insert input**. The result should look as in the screenshot below. Click **Save** to save the changes.



7. Go to the live site now and view some group's profile. You should see the **GroupID** field as highlighted in the screenshot below.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples	
<u>Groups</u> ► (Group profile							
			Austral	ian trav	ellers			

This is a group of Australian travellers. If you are one of them, please register to the group. It is a great chance for you to get in touch with other Aussie travellers. They can share their experience and maybe even become your travel mates. On the other hand, if you are planning a trip to Australia, users from this group can serve you as a source of valuable information and may even invite you to meet them during your trip.

Access: Anybody can view the content Created: 3/13/2009

GroupID: 57

2.3.4 Modifying templates for group pages

The **Groups -> Template** page and its child (**Pages**) are the group pages template. Based on this template, group pages section for user-contributed articles is created for each group. As you may have noticed in the <u>Creating a new group</u> chapter, these pages are copied under the **Group pages** node when a group is created on-site. The Template page is renamed to the name of the new group in this case. When creating a group via the administration interface, you need to copy the pages manually, rename the Template page, change its alias and specify the path in the group creating form.

In the following example, you will learn how to add the **Content rating** web part to the template so that users will be able to rate the articles in the group pages sections.

1. Log in to CMS Desk (login *administrator* with blank password by default). Switch to the Edit -> Design tab and select Groups -> Template -> Pages from the content tree.

2. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the zoneList web part zone and choose the Content rating -> Content rating web part.

3. In the web part properties window, set only the following property:

Show for document types: CMS.SimpleArticle

This ensures that the web part will be displayed only for the articles and not in the list. Click **OK**.

🖉 CMS Desk - Web Part pr	roperties We	sbpage Dialog	×
📸 Web part propert	ies (Conten	t rating)	<u>tation</u>
Properties Layout			
Disable view state:	Þ		~
Disable macros:	+		≡
Visibility			_
Visible:	۲		
Hide on subpages:	•		
Show for document typ	Des: •	CMS.SimpleArticle Select	
Display to roles:	۲	Select	
Scale settings			
Rating value:	•		
Rating type:		Stars	>
Refresh content		OK Cancel Apply	
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_40/C	MSDesk/PortalEng	ine/WebPartProperties.aspx?aliaspath=%2fGroups%2fTemplate%2fPage 🍤 Local intranet	

4. The web part is now placed on the page. Notice that when you switch to some of these pages in the **Group pages** section (e.g. *Group pages -> American travellers -> Pages*), the web part appears there too. This happens because these pages share the same page template - **Community Site - Group pages**. Any modifications that you make to the original page or to the copies will be reflected on all the pages using this page template.



5. If you go to the live site now, you should see the **Content rating** web part on all articles in all group pages sections. If you create a new group and create some article in its group pages section, the web part will appear on it too.

|--|--|

Groups + American travellers + Pages + My flight to Australia

My flight to Australia

I recently had the experience of flying from Europe to Australia. For those of you who haven't ever flown such a long distance: you can't imagine how long it actually is. Even today's best airplanes are not able to fly the whole distance from Europe to Australia, so they have to make a refuel stop. The usual waypoints are Hong Kong and Bangkok. We made a stop at the second mentioned.

While the plane was being refueled and prepared for the second half of our flight, we had to leave it and spend about one hour at the airport. Impressive at least. It was many times the size of the Prague airport and watching the traffic there was just breathtaking. It seemed to me like one of the world's biggest crossroads. Right here was where I realized the true sense of the well know phrase that the world is getting smaller and smaller.

After then, we entered the plane again and began the rest of our flight. Even though I slept the most of the time, I feel rather tired at the moment, so I decided to accomodate as soon as possible and start exploring the city tomorrow, after a proper portion of good sleep.

☆☆☆☆☆Current rating: 4 (1 ratings)

Further steps: You have learned how to add the Content rating web part to the group pages. This way, you can place any web part to the pages and achieve your required functionality. As you have seen, modifications made to any of the group pages are automatically reflected on all other group pages because of the shared page template. If you want to achieve different functionality on some of the group pages, you will have to switch to the Properties -> Template tab and click **Clone as ad-hoc template**. Changes made to a page with this cloned ad-hoc template will not be reflected on pages using the original page template.

2.4 Forums

2.4.1 Current functionality

The **Forums** section contains the typical discussion forums that can be found on most web sites on today's Web, allowing site users to read and contribute to discussions on various topics. While forums are one of the most common features on today's web sites, we won't go deep in describing how they can be used, as we believe it should be familiar to you already. For detailed information on the Kentico CMS Forums module, please refer to Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Forums.

If you enter the Forums section as a site visitor, you can see that the forums are divided into two main sections - **Community forums** and **Back-packer forums**. These sections are called **forum groups**. Forum groups contain **forums** (Announcements, Community FAQs, ...) and the forums contain particular **threads**. There are two types of threads:

- Discussion forums threads contain classical discussion on a given topic
- **Question-Answer forum** threads are structured so that the first post is a question and the following posts are trying to answer the given question

Home	Blogs News Media Forums Groups Members Examples			Search						
Forums										
usernam	Log on	9	Search forums:	Go Advanced search						
Forum		Threads	Posts	Last post						
	Community forums This is a general forum for both registered and not registered site users.									
R	Announcements Find out the latest news about our community here	2	2	Jenny (10/25/2008 11:59:09 AM)						
	Community FAQ Answers to Frequently Asked Questions about our community	1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 2:01:55 PM)						
P	General discussion General discussion without rules and limitations	2	6	David (10/25/2008 3:10:11 PM)						
	Members discussion Discussion for community members only	1	5	Pogo (11/5/2008 4:20:25 PM)						
Forum		Threads	Posts	Last post						
	packer forums um is intended for user groups, their members and topics related to the particular groups.									
R	Announcements Find out the latest news about groups here	1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 5:51:40 PM)						
R	EAQs Answers to Frequently Asked Questions about groups	1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 6:15:57 PM)						
P	General discussion General discussion without rules and limitations	5	19	Jimbo (1/7/2009 3:13:50 PM)						

There are currently no users on-line.

If you view the **Forums** page in CMS Desk's **Design** tab, you can see that each forum group is displayed via one **Forum group** web part. You can place a forum group to any page of your web site by placing the **Forum group** web part on the page and setting its **Group name** property.

w Delete Copy Move Up Dow		🔍 Preview 💽 Live site 📃 List							
Community Site	Page Des	ign Form Properties			🗹 Display web part conter				
e Flogs		Advanced search							
Forums Forum search	Comm	ForumGroup @ Threads Posts Last post ommunity forums							
Groups Group pages F Group pages F Members F Examples		Announcements Find out the latest news about our community here Lock	2	2	Jenny (10/25/2008 11:59:09 AM)				
Files Special pages Logon page Search		Community FAQ Answers to Frequently Asked Questions about our community Lock	1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 2:01:55 PM)				
E Jeardi		General discussion General discussion without rules and limitations Lock	2	6	David (10/25/2008 3:10:11 PM)				
		Members discussion Discussion for community members only Lock	1	5	Pogo (11/5/2008 4:20:25 PM)				
	- Forum	Sroup1 @	Threads	Posts	Last post				
		packer forums um is intended for user groups, their members and topics related to the partic	ular groups.						
		Announcements Find out the latest news about groups here Lock	1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 5:51:40 PM)				
	2	EAQs Answers to Frequently Asked Questions about groups	1	1	Jenny				

Forums management can be performed in **CMS Desk -> Tools -> Forums**. On the page, you can see a list of existing forum groups. By clicking the **Edit** (**\screwcequestion**) icon, you can enter the **Forum group properties** section.



There are three tabs available in this section:

- **General** on this tab, you can set some basic properties of this forum group; the properties can be inherited by particular forums
- View displays a preview of how the forum group appears on the live site

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administration					<u>Switch to Site Ma</u>	nager	Site:
Tools Abuse report BizForms BizForms Booking system Content staging Custom tables E-commerce File import File import S Forums Groups	-		General	oup properties Community forums View							
Media libraries Message boards Newsletter Polls Reporting Web Analytics		Actions	습 문 습 문 습 문	Forum name Announcements Community FAQ General discussion Members discussion	Open Open Open	Moderated No No No No	Threads 2 1 2 1 2 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	Posts 2 1 6 5	10/25/2008 11:59:09 AM	Last po Jenny Jenny David Pogo	ost by

The forum management section accessible by clicking the **Edit** (**\Sigma**) icon offers the following tabs:

- **Posts** tree-like view of threads in the forum, with the possibility of performing management tasks like editing or deleting posts, replying to them, approving or rejecting, etc.
- General general properties of the forum, which can be inherited from the forum group's general tab mentioned above
- Subscriptions management of subscriptions; users can subscribe to receiving notifications about new posts
- **Moderators** on this tab, you can set if the forum is moderated and assign site users with the rights to moderate this forum
- · Security on this tab, you can set permissions for particular actions in the forum
- View displays a preview of how the forum group appears on the live site

CMS Desk Conter	nt My Desk Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager Site: Community Site 💌
 Tools Abuse report BizForms Boking system Content staging Content staging Custom tables Custom tables Frile import Forums Groups Media libraries Newsletter Polls Reporting Web Analytics 	Forum group prope Earum aroups > Community for Forums General View Earums > General discussion Osts General Subscriptions General discussion General discussion General Giscussion General Giscussion General Ciscussion General Ciscus	ums Moderators Security View Porum post Edit _X Delete Reply Split thread Reject Reject sub-tree

2.4.2 Modifying the forums structure

When developing your community site from the Community Starter site template, you will probably want to modify the forums structure so that it matches the needs of your community. In the following example, you will learn how to **create a new forum group** and **replace the Back-packer forums** with it.

1. Go to CMS Desk -> Tools -> Forums and click the Add forum group link at the top of the page.



- 2. On the New forum group page, enter the following details:
- Group display name name of the forum group displayed on the live site and in the administration interface
- Group code name name of the forum group used in web site code
- **Description** text describing the forum group, displayed above the list of forums in the group on the live site
- Forum group base URL URL of the page where the Forum group web part displaying this forum group resides; leave the *Inherit from settings* check-box checked
- Forum group unsubscription URL URL of the page where the Forum unsubscription web part resides; leave the *Inherit from settings* check-box checked

Click OK.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk Tools	Administration	<u>SM</u>	vitch to Site Manager
 Tools Abuse report BizForms Bolgs Booking system Content staging Custom tables Custom tables File import Forums Groups Media libraries Message boards Newsletter Polls Reporting Web Analytics 		Soroups New for Groups New Group display n Group code nar Description: Forum group ba Forum group ur	forum group ame: ne:	Web development forums WebDevelopmentForums This forum contains discussion related to web development, related technologies, job offers in this field and many more.	Inherit from settings Inherit from settings

3. The **Forum group properties** page will be displayed. Let's make some additional settings which you may find useful before we start defining the forums within this forum group. Switch to the **General** tab and set the following properties:

- Forum type User can choose; this option enables users to choose from classical or Question-Answer type when creating a new thread
- User can edit own posts enable this option so that users can edit their own posts
- User can delete own posts enable this option so that users can delete their own posts
- Enable * macros in posts enable all the check-boxes so that users can use all BBcode macros in their posts; for more details on supported BBcode macros, please refer to <u>Kentico CMS Developer's</u> <u>Guide -> Module Forums -> BBcode support</u>

CMS Desk Switch to Site Manager My Desk Tools Administration Content 🖃 - Tools Eorum group properties o Abuse report 🔄 BizForms Forum groups + Web development forums 📚 Blogs 腸 Booking system Forums General View Forum group unsupscription URL: /Special-Pages/Forum-Onsubscribe.aspx 💌 Innerit from Se 🗞 Content staging 🔠 Custom tables 🦪 E-commerce Require e-mail addresses: 🐚 File import Display e-mail addresses: 🤮 Forums Enable WYSIWYG editor: 🚨 Groups Use security code (CAPTCHA): 🙀 Media libraries 🙆 Message boards O User can choose 🙈 Newsletter 🔘 Discussion forum Forum type: 🕐 Polls O Question-Answer forum 🛃 Reporting 🚮 Web Analytics Minimum votes to mark post as answer: 5 400 Maximum image side size: 0 Attachment max. file size (kB): **~** User can edit own posts: User can delete own posts: ✓ Enable URL macros in posts: **~** Enable image macros in posts: **~** Enable quote macros in posts: **~** Enable code snippet macros in posts : **~** Enable bold font macros in posts: **~** Enable italics font macros in posts: **~** Enable underline font macros in posts: 🔽 Enable strike font macros in posts: ¥ Enable font color macros in posts: **~** OK.

Leave the rest of the properties at their default values and click OK.

4. Now we will define the forum group structure - the particular forums. Switch to the **Forums** tab and click the **Add forum** link.

CMS Desk	Content	t My Desk Tools	Administration		Switch to Site Manager
 Tools G Abuse report BizForms Blogs Booking system Content staging Custom tables E-commerce File import Forums Groups Media libraries 	-	Server and the server of the s	Web developm	ent forums	
🔄 Message boards					

- 5. Enter the following details:
- Forum display name name of the forum displayed on the live site and in the administration interface
- Forum code name name of the forum used in web site code
- **Description** text describing the content of the forum, displayed in the list of forums in the group on the live site

CMS Desk Switch to Site Manager Si Content My Desk Tools Administration - ·· Tools 🧕 Forum group properties o Abuse report 🗐 BizForms Forum groups + Web development forums 📚 Blogs 腸 Booking system Forums General View 🗞 Content staging Forums + New forum Custom tables 🥥 E-commerce 🐚 File import ASP.NET discussion Forum display name: 🚨 Forums Forum code name: ASP_NET_Discussion 🏭 Groups 🚂 Media libraries Discussion related to this Microsoft technology 🙆 Message boards 🔊 Newsletter Description: 🕥 Polls 🛃 Reporting 🚮 Web Analytics Forum base URL: 🗹 Inherit from forum group Forum unsubscription URL: ~/Special-Pages/Forum-Unsubscribe.aspx 🗹 Inherit from forum group Require e-mail addresses: 🗌 🗹 Inherit from forum group Display e-mail addresses: 🗌 🗹 Inherit from forum group Enable WYSIWYG editor: 🗌 🗹 Inherit from forum group Use security code (CAPTCHA): 📃 🗹 Inherit from forum group Forum is open: **~** Forum is locked: Forum is moderated: ОK

You can leave the rest of the properties at their default values and click **OK** to save the forum.

6. You are redirected to the forum editing section. If you switch to the **Forums** tab again, you should see the newly created forum in the list. Repeat the procedure and define some other forums in this forum group. When you are finished, you should see all the forums in the list on the **Forums** tab like in the screenshot below.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administration					<u>Switch to Site Manager</u>
 Tools Abuse report BizForms BizForms Booking system Content staging Custom tables E-commerce File import Forums Groups Media libraries 		Forum grou	<u>ups</u> ► \ General	oup propert Web developme View	ent forums				
🧕 Message boards		Actions		Forum name	;	Status	Moderated	Threads Posts La	st post Last post by
. 🔕 Newsletter		💊 🗶 f	ê 🚯	ASP.NET discu	ussion	Open	No		
		S 🗶	ê 4	PHP Discussio	on	Open	No		
Web Analytics		S 🗶	ê	Web developm	nent jobs	Open	No		
7. Now when the forum group is created and the forums in it defined, we can publish the forum group on the live site. We will place it instead of the original **Back-packer forums**.

Go to **CMS Desk -> Content -> Edit**. Select the **Forums** document from the content tree and switch to the **Design** tab. Scroll down the page and choose to **Configure** () the **ForumGroup1** web part.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager					
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit 💽 Preview 💽 Live site 📃 List						
🖃 🌖 Community Site	Page Design Form Properties						
··· 📄 Home							
🕕 📄 Blogs	General discussion without rules and limitations						
🖃 ·· 📄 News	Lock						
media							
🖃 📄 🗖	Members discussion	Members discussion					
E Forum search	Discussion for community members only	Discussion for community members only					
🕕 📄 Groups 🕣 📄 Group pages	Lock						
iter in the second pages in the second page is the second page							
€ Examples	▼ ForumGroup1 🕜						
🕒 🔁 Files	Back-packer forums						
🗄 눧 Special pages	This forum is intended for user groups, their members and topics related t	o the particular groups.					
- 📄 Logon page		in paracalar groapor					
🔤 📄 Search	Announcements						
	Find out the latest news about groups here						
d	Lock						
	FAQs						
	Answers to Frequently Asked Questions about groups						
	Lock	Lock					

8. In the web part properties window, change the value of the **Group name** property to the name of the new forum group created above, which is **Web development forums** in our case. Click **OK**.

🖻 CMS Desk - Web Part properties Webpage Dialog 🛛 🛛 🔀									
Web part properties (Forum group)									
Properties Layout									
Group settings									
Forum layout:	► Flat								
Group name:	Web development forums								
Post options									
Enable favorites:	• •								
Enable signature:	• •								
Display attachment image:	•								
Attachment image maximal side size:	▶ 100								
Redirect to user profile:									
Thread view mode:	► Flat - oldest to newest	~							
Refresh content	OK Cancel	Apply							
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_40/CMSDesk/Porta	Engine/WebPartProperties.aspx?aliaspath=%2fForums&zoneid=zoneLeft&we 😒 Local intr	anet .							

9. If you switch to the live site now, you should see that the **Back-packer forums** have been replaced by the **Web development forums** defined earlier in this example. The forum group is fully functional and the discussion may begin.

ome Blogs News Media Forums Groups Members Examp	oles		Searc
orums			
semame Log on	•	Search forur	ns: Ga Advanced sea
Forum	Threads	Posts	Last post
Community forums This is a general forum for both registered and not registered site users.			
Rind out the latest news about our community here	2	2	Jenny (10/25/2008 11:59:09 AM)
Community FAQ Answers to Frequently Asked Questions about our community	1	1	Jenny (10/25/2008 2:01:55 PM)
General discussion General discussion without rules and limitations	2	6	David (10/25/2008 3:10:11 PM)
Members discussion Discussion for community members only	1	5	Pogo (11/5/2008 4:20:25 PM)
orum	Threads	Posts	Last post
Web development forums This forum contains discussion related to web development, related technologies, job offers in this field and man	ny more.		
ASP.NET discussion Discussion related to this Microsoft technology	0	0	(1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM)
PHP Discussion Discussion forum for PHP developers	0	0	(1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM)
Web development jobs Looking for a job? Or looking for skilled IT staff? Try this forum!!!	0	0	(1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM)

Further steps: You have learnt how to define a new forum group and publish it on the live site. Like this, you can define another forum group and publish it instead of the Community forums forum group. In case that you wanted to have more than two forum groups published, you only need to place another Forum group web part on the page and define its **Group name** property. You may also want to have only one forum group published, in which case you only need to remove one of the Forum Group web parts.

2.5 Blogs

76

2.5.1 Current functionality

The Blogs module is a 'ready-made' solution and you will probably not need to make any customization tasks to it. However, we will at least describe its functionality from the site user's perspective in brief. Detailed information on the Blogs module can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Blogs</u>.

1. Go to the live site and sign in as **David** with blank password. Click **Blogs** in the main menu.

On the **Blogs section's title page**, you can see recent blog posts from all blogs on the site.You can browse the posts by topic - by clicking a keyword in the **Tag cloud**, a list of blog posts tagged with the keyword will be displayed. You can also browse the posts by particular blogs. The **Recent blogs** box displays links to the most recently created blogs and a link to the list of all blogs. After clicking a blog link, both in this box or in the list of blogs, you will be redirected to its title page.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples			Search	
Recent	t blog	posts									
-		•								Shortcuts	
<u>The</u>	long lo	<u>ng flight</u>								<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile	
Finally, after some 23 hours of flight, I am on the other side of the world than I was yesterday around this time. I feel terribly tired after the long flight, but before I go to sleep, I found some time to write about the first impressions of my journey. My invitations Create a new aroup Create a new blog Sign out										My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog	
				Posted to <u>Ho</u> l	iday in Austra	alia by Kelly Taylo	n on 10/26/2008 3	:05:12 PM with <u>0 comments</u>	5	Tag cloud	
Elvir	Flying tomorrow									airport Austria bus cuisine Czech Republic France Germany hitchhiking hostel	
		after six mont	hs of hard ev	eryday work,	I decided to h	iave some nice t	ime and go on ho	w is my big day. Finally, bliday. Australia has w job and the wage I		Italy luggage sacher torte Slovenia Spailin subway tag tags tourism traffic train	
		get for it, it is f	inally afford	able for me to	get there.					Recent blogs	
										<u>Holiday in Australia</u>	
				Posted to Ho	iday in Austra	<mark>alia</mark> by Kelly Tayl o	n on 10/26/2008 2	:19:18 PM with <u>0 comments</u>	<u>s</u>	Abi's european trip	
\sim										<u>View all blogs</u>	
Sayi	<u>ing goo</u>	dbye Europ	<u>e</u>								
0										Latest blog comments	
	and a second	Paris, our final gone. I have a at pictures we	There are currently no comments.								
	2	Today, PJ wen	t to do some	shopping and	we've promis	ed each other g	o out have dinne	r tonight.			

2. Click some blog to display its title page. The **blog's title page** is similar to the Blogs section's title page, but displays only posts from the current blog. In addition to the Tag cloud, you can browse posts in the current blog **by months** too. By clicking a month link in the **Post archive** box, you can display only posts from the clicked month.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples			Search
Abi's e	uropea	n trip								
		Shortcuts								
<u>Sayi</u>	ng good		<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile							
50	Paris, our final destination. Because there's no upcoming hitchhiking trip, the tension between PJ and me is all gone. I have a friend here, so the last night we spend in his place, drinking wine and using his computer to look at pictures we've taken during our month in Europe. My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog Sun out Today, PJ went to do some shopping and we've promised each other go out have dinner tonight. Create a new blog Sun out									
	Posted to Abi's european trip by Abigail Woodwarth on 7/5/2008 1:56:04 PM with O comments									
Wir	Wir sind Berliners									<u>cuisine</u> <u>e Germany</u>
	m 👝	uch more rela	axed in comp	Darison with ju	ist week ago. '	We are almost a	ble to joke with	our trip, we're getting each other again. We	hitchhiking Italy luggage sacher to Slovenia Spain subw. tourism traffic train	orte
		on't have muc allery ticket.	h money let:	t, though, so v	ve're mostly h	anging around,	considering ever	ry Euro, spent for the	Latest blog co	mments
									There are currently r comments.	no
			Pos	ted to <mark>Abi's eu</mark>	ropean trip by	Abigail Woodwa	arth on 7/3/2008 1	:54:27 PM with <u>0 comments</u>		
Disa	pointme	nt in Pragu	e						Post archive	
0 2104			-						<u>July 2008(3)</u> June 2008(7)	
	ra	ther glad to s	ee me. The	trip to Prague	is one smoot		ity center is jam	a bus. Oddly enough, PJ's med with people again.		

3. Click some blog post to display it. Below the text, you can find the **Content rating** web part, social bookmarking links, trackbacking URL and the comments section where you can post comments on the blog post.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples			Search
Abi's e	Abi's european trip > July 2008									
0		Shortcuts My profile								
Wir	Wir sind Berliners									
	Berlin, after a long time the city we both wanted to see. And as we're almost done with our trip, we're getting much more relaxed in comparison with just week ago. We are almost able to joke with each other again. We don't have much money left, though, so we're mostly hanging around, considering every Euro, spent for the gallery ticket.									
									Latest blog co	mments
Tomorrow though. T seem, tog	The few of yo gether with P.	all the luggage we have, jgage at all. Oddly as it may besn't need to have much	There are currently r comments.	0						
						age of the public lav ing else is just junk		ually conveniently located iithout,	Post archive	
	or more than a							in reality. And I don't recall admit that it is more than	<u>July 2008(3)</u> June 2008(7)	
_						Posted by		arth on 7/3/2008 1:54:27 PM		
							Filed under: G	iermany, <u>hitchhiking</u> , <u>luggage</u>		
***	合合合合合 Current rating: 0 (0 ratings)									
Bookmark th	Bookmark this page to: 🔍 🖬 🥙 🝃 🚏 🖽 📲 🌆 🔯 😛 는 🜌 🚰 🎟 🕒 🎸 👰 🕒 🥹 🏰 🗶 🔄 🐼 🕅 😓 🚱									
Trackback U	Trackback URL: http://localhost/KenticoCM5_40/trackback/bc60d227-73b6-4d21-b388-35ccade81adc/Wir-sind-Berliners.aspx									
📏 Con	Comments									

Blog post currently doesn't have any comments.

Leave comment

<u>Subscribe</u>

Name: Da∨id _____

4. When we have seen what the Blogs section on the site looks like, we can try creating our new blog. This can be done anywhere on the live site by clicking the **Create a new blog** link in the **Shortcuts** menu.



5. On the **Create new blog** page, you only need to enter the name and description of your new blog and click **OK**.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples	
Create	e new bl	og						

You can create your new blog by entering the required details into the fields below. You will be able to change the entered data later. After submitting these details, you will be able to edit your blog's properties or start blogging immediately.

Blog name:	My first blog								
	This is my first blog on this marvelous, Kentico CMS powered community site.								
Blog description:									
	ОК								

6. The blog is now created and you are redirected to the blog's title page, where you can **Edit blog** () properties or write a **New blog post**.

Home	Blogs	News	Media	Forums	Groups	Members	Examples	
My first	t blog							
💊 <u>Edit blo</u>	g							
New blog p	<u>oost</u>							

7. From now on, the blog is fully functional. You can find a link to the blog in the **Recent blogs** box on the **Blogs** title page, in the **list of all blogs** and on your **public profile** page.

2.6 Media libraries

2.6.1 Current functionality

The media libraries allow convenient storage of **large amounts of files**. Not only media files, but also files of any other types can be stored within the libraries, while even **large file sizes** (several GB) are supported. Media libraries can be either global or related to a particular group. For detailed information on the module, please refer to <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Media libraries</u>.

1. If you go to the live site, you can enter the site's global media libraries section by clicking the **Media** link in the main menu. This section displays the content of the only global media library on the site, which is named **Media**. You can see the library's folder structure tree on the left. By clicking a folder, files stored within the folder will be displayed in the main area.



2. If you click a file's thumbnail, the file will be displayed in the main area. Depending on the type of file, the display may vary. Images will be displayed in large size, videos or sound files display a player where the files can be played. Documents are displayed only in form of the document type icons. Additional information about the file is displayed in the bottom left corner. All files can be downloaded using the **Download** link at the bottom right corner.



3. As we mentioned above, groups can also have their own media libraries. This is the case of the **Czech Republic fans** group on this sample site. If you go to **Groups -> Czech Republic fans** and click the **Media** link in the **Group links** box, media libraries of the group will be displayed.



2.6.2 Creating custom media libraries

In the following example, you will learn how to create a new global media library and publish it on the site.

1. Go to **CMS Desk -> Tools -> Media libraries** and click the **New media library** link at the top of the page.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administration	-				Switch to Site Manager
Tools Abuse report BizForms Blogs Booking system Content staging Custom tables E-commerce File import File import Groups Media libraries Message boards		New	media libr Name	Folder Descr Media Here	•	ifferent kind	of media file	S.	

2. Enter the following details into the form:

- Display name name of the library displayed on the live site and in the administration interface
- Code name name of the library used in web site code
- Description text describing the media library, displayed in the list of media libraries on the live site
- Teaser image upload some image which will be used as a teaser in the list of media libraries
- Folder name name of the physical folder in the file system which will contain the library files; it is located under <web project>/<site name>/media/

Click OK.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administration		Switch to Site Manager
 Tools Abuse report BizForms Blogs Booking system Content staging Custom tables File import File import Forums Groups Media libraries Newsletter Polls Reporting Web Analytics 		Media li	braries name: [ame: [tion: [image: [library Library first media	
			l	OK		

3. You will be redirected to the media library management interface, which is also accessible by clicking the **Edit** (**\scalence**) icon in **CMS Desk -> Tools -> Media libraries**.

First, we will define the folder structure. Select the root of the tree and click the **New** (^(G)) icon. Enter the name of the new folder and click **OK**. Repeat the procedure so that you have at least two different folders in the library.

Please note: due to ASP.NET architecture, site restart occurs whenever a folder is moved, renamed or deleted. To prevent this, it is a good practice to define the library structure when creating it and not to modify it when the site is already running.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager
→ Tools 		Media library properti Media libraries My first media lib Files General Security	
		 ₩ew Copy Rename Move Delete 	🕡 New folder
- 🧐 Forums - 🔐 Groups - 🚂 Media libraries - 📋 Message boards		⊡·my_first_library (0)	Folder name: photos_from_usa

4. Now we can upload the files. Select one of the folders and click the **Upload file** () icon at the top right corner.

In the pop-up window that you can see in the screenshot below, enter the path or browse for the **File** that you want to upload. The **Preview** is an image displayed as the file teaser in the list of files. This is useful for non-image files. If you are uploading an image, you don't need to upload any preview file, as the image itself will be resized and used as the preview automatically. Finally, enter some text description and click **Save**.

Repeat the procedure so that you have several files in each of the folders.

Files General Security		
Rename Copy Rename Move Delete Image: my_first_library (0) Image: my_first_library (0)	Media library - New media file Webpage Dialog There are not Save Save and create another File:* C:\Documents and Settings\petrpe\Desktop\berlin.jpg Browse Preview: This is a picture taken in Berlin. Description: http://localhost/KenticoCM5_40/CMSModules/MediaLibrary/Controls/MediaLibrary/Fil Slocal intranet	Upload file

5. Our media library is now finished and we can publish it. Switch to **CMS Desk -> Content -> Edit -> Design** tab and choose the **Media** page from the content tree. Choose to **Configure** () the **MediaGallery** web part.



6. In the web part properties window, select your new media library in the **Media library** drop-down list and click **OK**.

Content	
Media library:	Media (current media library)
Path:	Media My first media library
Show subfolders content:	• 🗸
Display file count:	► □

7. If you switch to the live site now, you should see that the original media library has been replaced by your new media library.



Further steps: You have created a new media library, defined its structure, uploaded some files and published it on the live site instead of the original sample media library. As obvious, you can publish only one global media library this way. This might be fine for many sites, but if you want to have more global media libraries published on the site, go to the <u>next chapter</u> where you can find more information on how to achieve this functionality.

2.6.3 Publishing more than one global media library

In the following example, you will learn how to publish more than one global media library on the site. We will try to achieve a functionality similar to group media libraries (see **Groups -> Czech Republic** fans and click **Media** in the **Group links** box). As you can see, we have two pages where a list of available libraries is on the first page. Links in the list lead to the second page where the content of the clicked library is displayed dynamically.

1. Go to **CMS Desk -> Content -> Edit** and select the **Media** page from the content tree. Click the **New** icon above the content tree to create a new page under the **Media** page.



2. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type. For **Page name**, enter **Media gallery** and choose the **Community site -> Community site -> Media** page template. Click **Save**.



3. Now we have two pages showing the same content because they use the same page template. But the required functionality is the following: the **Media** page should display a **list of global media libraries**; after clicking a library, users should be redirected to the **Media gallery** page, which shall display the **content of the clicked library**.

First, select the **Media gallery** page and switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab. Select the **Select inherited levels** radio-button and choose to inherit from **Root** only.

Image: Copy Move Up Down Image: Copy Mov	
Page Design Form Properties	
Image:	

4. Switch to the URLs tab and enter /Media/{LibraryName} into the Document URL path filed. Click Save.

CMS Desk Content My Des	k Tools Administration Switch t	to Site Manager Site: Co
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview O Live site List	
Community Site Home Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Slogs Sl	Page Design Form Properties	
E Media Media gallery Forums Forups Forup pages E Members F Examples	Template Path Metadata Document alias: Media-gallery Categories Document URL path: /Media/{LibraryName} Menu Image: Use custom URL path	
Files Special pages Cogon page Search	Workflow Extended properties Versions URL extensions: Related docs Track campaign:	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab and choose to **Configure** (*IFP*) the **Media gallery** web part. Set the value of the **Media library** property to **(current media library)** and click **OK**.

🖉 CMS Desk - Web Part propertie	es Webpage Dialog	
📸 Web part properties (M	edia gallery)	Documentation
Properties Layout		
Display to roles:	> Select	~
Content		
Media library:	(current media library)	
Path:	•	
Show subfolders content.		
Display file count:	•	
Display active content:	•	
Preview suffix:	•	
Icon set name:	•	
Hide folder tree:		~
Refresh content	OK Cancel	Apply

6. Select the **Media** page and on the **Properties -> Template** tab, click the **Clone as ad-hoc template** link. Click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager Site: Co
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit OPreview OLive site List	
🖃 🌍 Community Site	Page Design Form Properties	
···· 📄 Home	Page Design Fonn Fropercies	
🕕 📄 Blogs	General	
	URLs	
😑 📄 Media		
🔤 📄 Media gallery	Template The changes were saved.	
⊕ ·· 📄 Forums	Metadata	
🖅 📄 Groups 吏 📄 Group pages	Categories Template: Community Site - Media	Select
🕕 📄 Group pages 🛓 📄 Members	Save as new template	<u></u>
	Menu	
· ≥ Files	Workflow Inherit template	
🕒 📂 Decial pages	Versions Clone as ad-hoc temp	late
📄 Logon page	Related docs	
📄 Search	Linked docs	<u>'8</u>
	Security Inherit content:	
	 Use page template setti Do not inherit any conter Select inherited levels 	-

7. Switch to the Design tab and choose to Remove the MediaGallery web part.



8. Add (+) the **Media Library -> Media libraries viewer** web part to the **zoneCenter** web part zone, to the place of the removed **MediaGallery** web part. In the web part properties window, choose to **Edit** the **Transformation Name** property.

🖉 CMS Desk - Web Part properties -	- Webpage Dialog	X
📸 Web part properties (Med	ia libraries viewer)	Documentation
Properties Layout		
Display to roles:	> Select	
Repeater		
Transformation Name:	Community.Transformations.Media Select Edit	
AlternatingItem Transformation Name:	Select Edit	
Separator Transformation Name:	Select Edit	
Header Transformation Name:	Select Edit	
Footer Transformation Name:	Select Edit	
No data behaviour		
Hide if no record found:		~
Refresh content	OK Cancel	Apply
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_40/CMSDesk/Port	a Engine/WebPartProperties.aspx?aliaspath=%2fMedia&zoneid=zoneCenter& 🍤 Local inti	ranet

9. In the pop-up window, replace the original transformation code with the following code. The transformation below is the original transformation with the highlighted code added.

This code ensures that library teasers and names will work as links leading to the /Media/ {LibraryName} URL, where {LibraryName} will be replaced with the name of the clicked library. This is the URL we have set in step 4 for the **Media gallery** page. Because the **Media library** property of the **Media gallery** web part on the page is set to (current media library), it will display content of the media library from the URL.

Click Save.

```
<div class="MediaListItem">
<a href="~/Media/<%# Eval("LibraryName") %>.aspx">
<%# IfEmpty(Eval("LibraryTeaserPath"), "<img border='0'</pre>
src=\"~/App_Themes/CommunitySite/Images/DefaultMediaTeaser.gif\" alt=\"\" />",
"<img src=\"" +
UrlHelper.GetAbsoluteUrlWithPort(ValidationHelper.GetString(Eval("LibraryTeaserP
ath"), "")) + "?width=180\" alt=\""+ Eval("name") +"\" border='0' />") %>
     </a>
     <a href="~/Media/<%# Eval("LibraryName") %>.aspx">
      <b>
<%#
LimitLength(ResHelper.LocalizeString(Convert.ToString(Eval("LibraryDisplayName",
true))), 20, "...") %>
     </b>
     </a>
     <div class="MediaLibraryListDescriptionText">
<%#
LimitLength(ResHelper.LocalizeString(Convert.ToString(Eval("LibraryDescription",
true))), 40, "...") %>
     </div>
     <div class="MediaListItemBottom"></div>
</div>
```

10. If you go to the live site now and click the **Media** link in the main menu, you should see the functionality described in the beginning of this chapter. A list of all global media libraries on the site will be displayed. After clicking a library in the list, its content will be displayed.





<u>Media</u> Here you can find different kind of m...





My first media li... This is my first media library.

2.7 Design and styles

2.7.1 Changing the header image

Changing the header image is a procedure of a few clicks. You only need an image of the same width as the original image, which is **960 pixels**. For the purpose of this example, you may use the **community_header02.gif**. The file can be found in the attached files package that can be found at http://www.kentico.com/Downloads/CommunityGuide/CommunitySiteGuide_files.zip. Once you have the image prepared, follow these steps:

1. Go to CMS Desk, select the Files folder from the content tree and click New.



2. Browse for your file on your local drive, optionally enter some text describing the image and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview O Live site I List	
Community Site	Files	
terrer Home terrererererererererererererererererere	SaveSave and create anotherSpell check	
i E News i E Media i F Forums	Upload file: community_header02.gif Browse	
	This is the Community Site header imag	e alternative.
	File description:	
🕞 🍃 Files Houtton_joinnow		

3. The image is now uploaded, so let's use it on the master page. Select the root of the content tree in **Page** tab and click the **Select** button at the top left corner of the header image.



4. Select your previously uploaded image from the content tree and click the Paste image link.



5. Finally, click **Save** to save the changes made to the master page.



6. If you switch to the live site now, you should see the new header image in its full beauty.



Further steps: You have learned how to change the header image on the master page. As you will probably not be satisfied with this level of customization, you can try modifying the site's CSS stylesheet. Like that, you will be able to fully customize the site's design according to your needs. In the next chapter, you can find a simple example showing how the site's CSS stylesheet can be modified.

2.7.2 Modifying the stylesheet

In this example, you will learn how to edit the site's CSS stylesheet. We will follow the <u>previous</u> <u>example</u> and modify the main menu so that it matches the new header image. Any other modifications of your choice can be done to the stylesheet the same way as described below.

1. Go to Site Manager -> Development -> CSS Stylesheets and choose to Edit () the Community Site stylesheet.

CMS Site Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Licenses	Support
Development Categories CSS stylesheets Countries			<mark>styleshe</mark> stylesheet	ets		
Custom tables Document types Call E-mail templates Call Form controls Call Inline controls Call Modules		Actions	•	ty Site Site Site - Gray and Blu	•	nitySite teSite teSiteGrayBlue
	s		Personal S Personal S	Site - Blue Site - Green	Persona Persona Persona	teSitePrinter ISite ISiteBlue ISiteGreen ISiteRed

2. The CSS stylesheet is divided into sections so that you can easily find the appropriate classes. The sections can be quickly accessed by selecting from the listbox on the right. Choose the **Top menu** section. Within this section, you can find all classes defining the appearance of the main menu.

觠 CSS stylesheet	properties		
CSS stylesheets + Comm	unity Site		
General Sites			
Bave 6 Check	<u>: out</u>		
Check out the stylesheet	to file c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS_4	O\CMSCSSStylesheets\CommunitySite.css to edit the styl	esheet externally.
The changes were saved.			
Stylesheet display name:	Community Site		
Stylesheet code name:	CommunitySite		
Stylesheet text:	<pre>/*#Main styles/Top menu#*/ .zoneTopMenu { width: 960px; background: #0000000; padding: 0px; margin: 0px; } .PagePlaceholder .zoneTopMenu { height: 90px; background-color: #BABABA } /* .DesignMode .zoneTopMenu .CMSLis { background: #BABABA url(} */ .CMSListMenuUL { list-style-type: none; }</pre>	A.;	Extended sector Clobal Global Group management Group sequent Group sequent Group sequent Logon page Logon page Logon page Main styles Membership top zone Search box Top menu Media library Members Messaging Modal popup My account News page Online members Polls Registration form Search page Shortcuts
	<		Tab menu

3. Replace the text of this section (all classes before the /*#Main styles/Search box#*/line, which indicates the beginning of the new section) with the code below. Click **Save** to save the changes.

```
/*#Main styles/Top menu#*/
.zoneTopMenu
ł
      width: 960px;
      background: #000000;
      padding: 0px;
      margin: 0px;
}
.PagePlaceholder .zoneTopMenu
{
      height: 90px;
      background-color: #BABABA;
/*
.DesignMode .zoneTopMenu .CMSListMenuUL
{
      background: #BABABA
url(../App_Themes/CommunitySite/Images/topmenu-bg.gif) repeat-x top center;
} */
.CMSListMenuUL
ł
      list-style-type: none;
      line-height: 27px;
      font-weight: bold;
      font-size: 13px;
      margin: Opx;
      padding: 0px;
       float: left;
      color: #000000;
}
.CMSListMenuLI, .CMSListMenuHighlightedLI
ł
      display: block;
      float: left;
      padding: 0px;
      background: #000000;
}
.CMSListMenuLIlast, .CMSListMenuHighlightedLIlast
ł
      background: none;
      display: block;
      float: left;
      padding: 0px;
}
.CMSListMenuLink, .CMSListMenuLinkHighlighted
ł
      color: #cccccc;
      text-decoration: none;
      display: block;
      padding: 0px 15px;
      margin-right: 2px;
.CMSListMenuLI a: hover, .CMSListMenuLinkHighlighted, .CMSListMenuHighlightedLI a
ł
      color: #FFFFFF;
```

}

```
background: #000000;
text-decoration: none;
```

4. If you switch to the live site now, you can see that the colors of the main menu have changed as defined in the pasted stylesheet code.



Further steps: You have learned how to access, modify and save changes to the site's CSS stylesheet. If you are familiar with CSS in general, it should be no problem for you to fully customize any class of the site's CSS stylesheet and thereby customize the site's design as you wish.



3 Part 2

3.1 Introduction

In this part of Kentico CMS Community Site Guide, you will learn how to create a community site from scratch. Our goal in the following series of step-by-step tutorials will be to create an identical site to the sample **Community Starter site** from the very beginning, so that you can see all the stages of the web site development process.

You will learn how to define the site structure, populate the pages with web parts and set the web parts' properties to achieve the required functionality. Finally, you will make some settings to specify pages with certain special functionalities.

Here are some things to keep on mind when reading the tutorials in order to get the most out of them:

- These tutorials are intended for web developers with at least the basic knowledge of Kentico CMS. If
 you are new to Kentico CMS, please read at least the portal engine version of <u>Kentico CMS Tutorial</u>
 to get familiar with the basics of the system.
- Most of the code examples are self-explaining for people with a certain knowledge of HTML, CSS and transformations, so they are therefore not always commented. It is therefore highly recommended that you have a solid understanding of these languages.
- The most important part of the tutorials are the **web part properties settings**. Because it would take many times as much space to describe all the settings in detail, some of them are just listed without further explanation. The good news is that when you click the **Documentation** link at the top right corner of each web part properties window.

CMS Desk - Web Part properties	Webpage Dialog	×
📸 Web part properties (Rep	peater)	Documentation
Properties Layout		
Content filter		
Document types:	CMS.BlogPost Select	
	⊖ Yes	
Combine with default culture:	, O No	
Culture code:	> Select	
Maximum nesting level:	• 1	
ORDER BY expression:	BlogPostDate DESC	
Select only published:		
Select top N documents:	▶ 6	~
Refresh content	OK Cancel	Apply
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySit	e/CMSDesk/PortalEngine/WebPartProperties.aspx?aliaspath=%2fHome&zoneid= 🧐 Local	intranet

104



After clicking the link, you get the web part's documentation with all the properties explained.

Other valuable information can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide</u>. References to this
reference guide can be found throughout the tutorials. In addition, going through the particular
modules' chapters can enrich your knowledge and understanding of the system too. So for example
if you don't understand something related to **Groups**, just open the **Module Groups** chapter of the
guide and see if you can find the answers.

Wildcard URLs are used throughout the whole web site, mainly in the Groups section and on user profiles. If you are not familiar with the wildcard URLs concept, please read <u>this chapter</u> of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

 Last but not least, Kentico CMS is well-known for its outstanding technical support. So if you get really stuck, don't hesitate and contact our support team at <u>http://www.kentico.com/Support.aspx</u>. They are always there to help you.

3.2 Pre-development tasks

3.2.1 Creating the site

To get us started, we need to create a new web site. This can be achieved using the **New site wizard**. You can access it both when making new installation and when you already have Kentico CMS installed.

• When making a new installation, you can choose Continue to the New site wizard in Step 4 of the



Database Setup. After clicking Next, you will be redirected to the first step of the wizard.

• Alternatively, if you already have Kentico CMS installed, you can access the **New site wizard** by clicking the alike named link in **Site Manager -> Sites**.

CMS Site Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Licenses	Support
🎒 Sites						
🍓 <u>New site wizard</u> 🗟 <u>Im</u>	port site oi	<u>robjects</u> <table-cell> Ez</table-cell>	(port objects			

1. In the first step of the wizard, choose Create a new site using a wizard and click Next.

Step 1	Choose default web site If you choose to create a blank site, the wizard will guide you through the process of creating a new site. If you choose to use a template, you will be able to choose one of the predefined web site templates.	
 O Create a new si O Use web site ter 	-	
		Next >

- 2. In the second step, enter the following details:
- Site display name: My Community Site
- Site code name: MyCommunitySite
- Domain name: localhost
- Site culture: English United States

Click Next to proceed.

Step 2	nter new site settings nter the display name and code name of the web site. Ti ill use to access the web site during development (you r ulture is the main language of the web site.		
	My Community Site MyCommunitySite localhost English - United States		
		(Previous Next >
3. In Step 3, leave all settings at their default values and click Next.

Step 3 Objects select ob	stion jects which should be imported.
 All objects Web site Administration Settings Development Global objects Molinistration Administration Development Development Development Development Development Development Development 	Import objects Please note: The import process may overwrite your existing objects. The existing objects are marked with * and will be overwritten if checked. Please select the object type from the tree if you wish to change the default selection. Click Next to start the import of selected objects. Gobal selection Load default selection Select all objects Select only new objects Deselect all objects Import settings Assign all objects to the imported site (recommended) Run the site after import Delete incomplete site when import fails Import files (recommended) Do not import objects where parent object is missing
	Previous Next>

4. An import log will be displayed. When it finishes, click the Next button.

	t progress s are being imported.			
Import has successfully finish. Starting site 'My Community Site Importing 'Notification template Importing 'Reports' objects Importing 'Reports' objects Importing AdLitems Importing AdLitems Importing Content categories' of Importing 'Content categories' Importing 'Content categories' Importing 'Scheduled tasks' obj Importing 'Scheduled tasks' obj Importing 'Scheduled tasks' objects Importing 'User' objects Importing 'User' objects Importing 'Web site' objects Importing 'Web site' objects Importing 'Web site' objects Importing 'Web site' objects Importing 'Avatars' objects Importing 'System tables' objects Importing 'Wodules' objects Importing 'Web part containers' Importing 'Web part containers' Importing 'Scheduled tasks' obj Importing 'Batajonshin names	e' s'objects s'objects bjects objects objects jects ects ts 'objects ts jects			
Import in progress	-	<pre></pre>	Cancel	Next >

5. In Step 5, you can choose from three default master page layouts. Choose the **Blank master page**, as we will define the layout later on.

Select master page The master page defines the layout of the main menu, logo and content placeholders. You can change it at any time later.					
Blank master page	Blank master page Generic default page template.				
	Top logo and left menu Master page template with logo on the top and menu on the left side.				
	Top logo and menu Master page for the Sample web site.				
	Next >				

6. The sixth step of the wizard allows you to define basic site structure. As we will create the pages when creating the particular sections, you can skip this step by clicking the **Next** button.

Step 6 Define the site map	6 Define basic site structure Define the site map of your new web site. The pages you create will be displayed in the site menu. Every page must have some template specified or it can inherit page template from the parent page.				
New Delete Up Down	Page properties Page name: Page template: Blank master page Select Remove template OK				
	Next >				

7. If you have reached the seventh step, you have created the site successfully. Click **Finish** to return to **Site Manager -> Sites**.

Step 7 The web site has been created successfully Now you can view and edit your new web site.	
<u>Edit your new web site</u> If this is your first web site, the default user account is administrator without password.	
	Finish

3.2.2 Assigning the CSS stylesheet

Once you have the site created, you can create its CSS stylesheet and assign it to the site. For the purposes of this guide, you should use the **CommunitySite.css**, which is the Community Starter site's original CSS stylesheet. The file can be found in the attached files package that can be found at http://www.kentico.com/Downloads/CommunityGuide/CommunitySiteGuide_files.zip.

1. Go to Site Manager -> Development -> CSS Stylesheets and click the New CSS stylesheet link at the top of the page.

ONG ONE Menores							
CMS Site Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Licenses	Support	
- Development							
🖓 Categories		🛛 🍝 CSS	styleshe	ets			
		Mew CSS stylesheet					
🕘 Countries							
🔠 Custom tables			Actions	Display na	mo .	Code nam	0
- 😪 Document types						-	
🖂 E-mail templates		💊 💥 📬	Corporate	Bite	CorporateSite		
Form controls		💊 🗶 📬	Corporate	site printer styles	CorporateS	BitePrinter	

- 2. Enter the following details:
- Stylesheet display name: My community site
- Stylesheet code name: MyCommunitySite
- Stylesheet text: copy and paste the stylesheet text from the CommunitySite.css file

Leave the Assign to web site My Community Site check-box checked and click OK.

CMS Site Manager Sites	Administration Set	ings Development	Licenses	Support			Switch to CMS	<u>Desk</u>
Development Categories S stylesheets	💰 New styl	esheet	u					
Countries	CSS stylesheets	 New CSS stylesheet 	t					
🍓 Cultures 🏭 Custom tables	Stylesheet displa	/ name:	My co	mmunity sit	e			
🛛 🍃 Document types 🖂 E-mail templates	Stylesheet code r	ame:	MyCo	mmunitySit	e]		
Form controls	Stylesheet text:							
	body							^
Notifications	font	-family: Tahoma, -size: 11px;	, Arial,	Verdana;				
Page templates Relationship names System tables	body.LTR, bo	ody.RTL						
資 Tag groups 	bac) top left;	ground: #585858	ur1('/	App_Ther	es/CommunitySite/Images/	'main-bg.	.gif') repeat-x	
		rin: Opx;						
		r: #000000;						
	}							>
	assign to web	site My Community Sit		ОК			~	

3. Go to Site Manager -> Sites and choose to Edit (\$) your site.



4. On the **General** tab, select the new stylesheet in both **Site CSS stylesheet** and **Editor CSS stylesheet** drop-downs and click **OK**.

CMS Site Manage	Or Sites Administration Settings Develo	pment Licenses Support					
Site Properties							
Sites • MyCommunitySit	e						
General Domain aliases	Cultures						
Site display name:	My Community Site						
Site code name:	MyCommunitySite						
Site domain name:	localhost						
Default content culture:	English - United States Change						
Default visitor culture:	: (Automatic)						
Site CSS stylesheet:	My community site						
Editor CSS stylesheet:	My community site						
Site description:	Sample blank web site						
	ОК						

You have learned how to create a new CSS stylesheet and assign it to your site.

3.2.3 Creating page templates category

Throughout the process of the web site creation, you will create various pages. It is a good practice to store the pages as page templates so that they can be reused later on at some other part of the web site, without the need to define the page structure again. For you to keep the page templates organized neatly, it is recommended to create a new page template category where the templates will be stored.

1. Go to **Site Manager -> Development -> Page templates**. Select the root of the template categories tree (Page Templates) and click the **New category** link. Enter the following details:

- Category display name: My Community Site templates
- Category name: MyCommunitySiteTemplates

Click OK. Your category is now created and you can save all your page templates for this site in it.



3.2.4 Defining web part containers

Web part containers are elements of the web site which can encapsulate web parts. They consist of a HTLM code before the web part and a after the web part. Throughout the web site, we will use six different web part containers which we will define in the following example.

1. Go to **Site Manager -> Development -> Web part containers** and click the **New container** link above the list.

CMS Site Manager	
Sites	Administration Settings Development Licenses Support
CMS Site Manager Sites	Administration Settings Development Licenses Support
Relationship names System tables Tag groups Time zones UI cultures Web part containers Web parts	N 🗶 🗣 Search box

- 2. In the New container dialog, enter the following details:
- **Display name**: Community Site Blue Box
- Code name: CommunitySite.BlueBox
- Text before web part:

```
<div class="blueBoxTop"></div>
<div class="blueBox">
<h3 class="blueBoxTitle">{%ContainerTitle%}</h3>
```

• Text after web part:

```
</div>
<div class="blueBoxBottom"></div>
```

Click OK.

3. Switch to the Sites tab and enable the web part container for My Community Site. Click OK.

CMS Site Manager	Sites	Administration Settings Development Licenses Support
 Development Categories CSS stylesheets COUntries Cultures Cultures		Container properties Web part containers Community Site - Blue Box General Sites The container is available for the following web sites: Select Site name My Community Site OK

- 4. Repeat the same procedure for the following five web part containers:
- Display name: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Code name: CommunitySite.BlueBoxLight
- Text before web part:

```
<div class="boxBlueLight">
<h3>{%ContainerTitle%}</h3>
```

• Text after web part:

</div>

- Display name: Community Site Gray Box
- **Code name**: CommunitySite.GrayBox
- Text before web part:

```
<div class="grayBoxTop"></div>
<div class="grayBox">
<h3 class="grayBoxTitle">{%ContainerTitle%}</h3>
```

• Text after web part:

```
</div>
<div class="grayBoxBottom"></div>
```

- Display name: Community Site Orange Box
- **Code name**: CommunitySite.OrangeBox
- Text before web part:

```
<div class="orangeBoxTop"></div>
<div class="orangeBox">
<h3 class="orangeBoxTitle">{%ContainerTitle%}</h3>
```

• Text after web part:

```
</div></div class="orangeBoxBottom"></div>
```

- Display name: Community Site Red Box
- **Code name**: CommunitySite.RedBox
- Text before web part:

```
<div class="redBoxTop"></div>
<div class="redBox">
<h3 class="redBoxTitle">{%ContainerTitle%}</h3>
```

• Text after web part:

```
</div>
<div class="redBoxBottom"></div>
```

- Display name: Community Site Red Box Light
- **Code name**: CommunitySite.RedBoxLight
- Text before web part:

```
<div class="boxRedLight">
<h3>{%ContainerTitle%}</h3>
```

Text after web part:

</div>

You have created six new web part containers. These containers can now be used to encapsulate any web part on the site, using the **Web part container** property. This property is common to all web parts.

3.2.5 Uploading images

We will upload some images that we will use later on. You can find the images in the **images** folder inside the files package attached to this guide, which can be downloaded at <u>http://www.kentico.com/</u> <u>Downloads/CommunityGuide/CommunitySiteGuide_files.zip</u>. Please extract the images from the archive into a separate folder on your local disk before you start with the following steps.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**.



2. As the document type, choose Folder.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy	Move Up	J Down	Edit Preview O Live site E List
🌖 My Community 🤅	Site		My Community Site
			New document
			Please select new document type:
			F Page (menu item)
			Folder
			Link an existing document

3. Enter Files as the Document name and click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy Mor		J Down	Edit Preview OLive site List
🌖 My Community Site			My Community Site
			Save and create another _ Spell check
			Document name: Files

4. Now you have the folder ready in the content tree. Select it and click **New**. Choose the **File** document type.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy	Move Up	Jown	Edit OPreview OLive site Ist
🖃 🌖 My Community S	ite		Files
Priles			New document Please select new document type:
			E Page (menu item)
			File Folder
			Link an existing document

5. Browse into the folder with the images, choose one of them, enter some text describing of the image and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager	Site:
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit OPreview OLive site List		
My Community Site Defines	Files		
m 🔁 riles	SaveSave and create anotherSpell check		
	Upload file: munity_header_img.jpg Browse This is the default header image.		_
	File description:		

6. Repeat the same procedure for the rest of the images in the folder. The result should look as in the following screenshot.



3.2.6 Creating a sample poll

In this exmple, you will learn how to create a sample poll that you will publish on the **Home** page <u>later</u> on. More information about Kentico CMS Polls module can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's</u> <u>Guide -> Module Polls</u>.

1. Go to CMS Desk -> Tools -> Polls and click the New poll link.

CMS Desk	Content My Desk Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager
Tools Abuse report BizForms Blogs Booking system Sochent staging	Polls	
- 📆 Custom tables - 🥪 E-commerce - 🕞 File import - 🎕 Forums - 🏖 Groups		
Media libraries Message boards Newsletter Messletter Messletter Messletter Messletter Messletter		

- 2. Enter the following details:
- Display name: Continents
- Code name: Continents
- Title: leave blank
- Question: Which continent are you planning to visit during your next trip?

Click OK.

CMS Desk	ntent My Desk Tools	Administration	Switch to Site Manager
 Tools Abuse report BizForms Blogs Booking system Content staging Custom tables E-commerce File import File import Forums Groups Media libraries Newsletter Polls Reporting 	Image: Second system Polls New policy Polls New policy Display name: Code name: Title: Question:	noll	

3. The poll appears in the **Edit** mode, offering you five tabs where settings can be done. On the **General** tab, enter the following:

• Message after vote: Thank you for your vote.

Click OK.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administra	ation					Switch to Site Manager
⊡. Tools		🐑 Pol	l prop	erties						
🗾 BizForms		Polls ► (Polls Continents							
Blogs 🏪 Booking system		General Answers Security Sites View								
······································		Display	name:	C	ontiner	nte				
Sa Forums		Code n	ame.	Co	ontiner	its				
a Groups		Title:								
							nt are you ng your ney		~	
Newsletter		Questic	n:							
									~	
🦾 🚮 Web Analytics		Open fr	om:				"" <u>N</u>	ow		
	4	Open to):				"" <u>N</u>	ow		
				Tł	nank	you for	your vote.		~	
		Messag	ge after v	ote:						
		Allowm	ultiple cl	hoices: 🔲						
					0	К				

4. Switch to the **Answers** tab and click the **New answer** link.

CMS Desk	Content My Desk Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager
 Tools Abuse report BizForms Blogs Booking system Content staging Custom tables E-commerce File import Forums Groups Media libraries Message boards Newsletter Polls Reporting 	Content My Desk Tools Administration Image: Content state Polls Continents Image: Content state General Answers Security Sites View Image: Content state Image: Cont	
🚮 Web Analytics		

5. Enter Africa into the Text field and click OK.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administration			<u>Switch to</u>	o Site Manager
⊡ Tools ⊡ Abuse report		🐑 Poll	prop	erties				
📰 BizForms 😪 Blogs		Polls Continents						
Booking system		General	Answei	rs Security Site	es View			
····崎 Content staging ····🍓 Custom tables	Answers New answer							
		Service Servic						
Sorums								
🏭 Groups 		Text: Af	rica					
🧧 Message boards			OK					
- 🔊 Newsletter								
Reporting								
📖 🚮 Web Analytics								

6. Repeat the procedure so that you have all five continents entered as answers.

CMS Desk	Content My Desk Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager
Tools Abuse report BizForms Content staging Custom tables Custom tables File import File	Poll properties Polls Continents General Answers Security Sites View New answer Reset answers	
	Actions Text Africa America Asia Asia Asia Australia Europe 	

3.2.7 Creating the tag groups

Kentico CMS Tags module enables assigning documents with key words for better content-related navigation and search. These key words are called **tags** and they are organized in **tag groups**. There is one tag group called **Content** in the default instalation. We will create two additional tag groups called **Blogs** and **News**, so that blog posts and news can be tagged with tags from separate groups.

More information about the Tags module can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module</u> <u>Tags</u>.

1. Go to **Site Manager -> Development -> Tag groups** and click the **New tag group** () link at the top of the page.

CMS Site Manager							
GING SILE Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Licenses	Support	
- Development		📛 Tag g	groups				
<mark></mark>		Site: My C	ommunity	Site		~	
Custom tables		🙀 New tag	aroup				
E-mail templates		Actions Na	me 🔺				
🔙 Inline controls 💑 Modules		💊 🗶 Ca	intent				
··· 📊 Notifications ···· 扪 Page layouts							
	es						
🌍 Time zones							

2. Enter the following details into the form:

- Display name: Blogs
- Code name: Blogs
- **Description**: This is the group of tags used for blog posts.

Click OK.

3. Repeat the same procedure and create a tag group with the following details:

- Display name: News
- Code name: News
- **Description**: This group contains tags used for news items.

Click OK.

4. If you go back to the list of tag groups, you should see the **Blogs**, **Content** and **News** tag groups.



3.2.8 Creating the News notification template

There will be the **News** page on the site, where news will be added by content editors or site administrators. On the page, users will have the possibility to sign up for receiving notifications about new news items published on the site. You can find a tutorial on creating the page <u>here</u>.

In this chapter, we will create a notification template. Notification e-mails will be based on this template. More information about Kentico CMS Notifications module can be found in <u>Kentico CMS</u> <u>Developer's Guide -> Module Notifications</u>.

- 1. Go to Site Manager -> Notifications and switch to the Templates tab.
- 2. From the Sites drop-down list, select My Community Site and click the New template () icon.

CME Cite Menoger							
CMS Site Manager	Sites	Administration	Settings	Development	Licenses	Support	
🖃 - Development		📓 Notific	ations				
		Gateways	emplates				
Cultures		Sites: My	Community	/ Site		*	
···· 🍘 Document types ···· 🍙 E-mail templates		🖪 <u>New tem</u>	olate				
······································							
🔤 🔲 Page layouts							

- 3. In the next dialog, enter the following details:
- Display name: News notification
- Code name: NewsNotification

Click OK.



- 4. Switch to the **Text** tab and define the template's text the following way:
- Subject: Community Site News

Enter the following template text into both HTML text and Plain text fields:

```
Hello,
news item {%notificationcustomdata.newstitle%} has been just published on the
Community site. You can see it at {%documentlink%}.
You are subscribed for receiving this automatic e-mail notification. If you no
longer wish to receive these notifications, please change your preferences in
your user profile at the Community Site.
```

Click Save. The template is ready to be used.

CMS Site Manager Sites	Administration	Settings Developmen	It Licenses	Support	Switch to CMS
). Development	🔎 Notific	cations			
🍪 Categories	4				
SS stylesheets	Gateways	Templates			
🛛 🕙 Countries		-			
- 🎯 Cultures	<u>Templates</u>	 News notification 			
🔠 Custom tables					
🛛 🍋 Document types	General To	ext			
🖂 E-mail templates					
🗆 🔙 Inline controls					
	Click here	for template macro examp	les		
<u>f</u> Notifications	e noncinero				
	Gatewa	y: Email gateway ———			
🦂 Page templates					
	Subject	: Community Site New:	в		
🔤 🗐 System tables	HTML te	ext: B I 👌 🗄			
😁 😇 Tag groups					
🛛 👩 Time zones		Hello,			
🖤 🍓 VI cultures		news item {%notification	customdata.news	itle%} has l	been just published on the Community site. You can see it at
🔤 Web part containers		{%documentlink%}.			
🛛 🚵 Web parts					otification. If you no longer wish to receive these notifications, please
🛛 🧿 Web templates		change your preference:	s in your user profi	e at the Co	mmunity Site.
	Diain ta				
	Fiairite	xt: Hello,			
		news item {%not;	ificationcus	tomdats	.newstitle%} has been just published on
					at {%documentlink%}.
		W			
				-	his automatic e-mail notification. If you tifications, please change your
		Ino ronger wish (to receive (nese nu	ciricacions, prease change your

3.2.9 Creating a sample Media library

In the following example, we will create a sample media library. This media library will be global, which means that all site users and visitors will be able to see its content on the **Media** page. We we will create the Media page later on in this guide in <u>this chapter</u>.

Detailed information about the **Media libraries module** can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's</u> <u>Guide -> Module Media libraries</u>.

1. Go to CMS Desk -> Tools -> Media libraries and click the New media library link.



2. In the following dialog, enter the details listed below:

- Display name: My Community Site Media
- Code name: MyCommunitySiteMedia
- Description: enter some text describing the media library
- Teaser image: you can leave the field blank
- Folder name: MyCommunitySiteMedia

Click OK.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administration
Tools Abuse report BizForms Blogs Content staging Custom tables Custom tables E-commerce File import S Forums Groups Media libraries Message boards		Media lil	name: [t me: [t me: [t	dia library ▶ New media library My Community Site Media MyCommunitySiteMedia This is the global media library of Ty Community Site.
		Teaser i Folder n		Upload: Browse MyCommunitySiteMedia.
			ſ	ОК

3. The media library has been created and you are redirected to the library's editing interface. We will define the folder structure first.

Click the **New** icon while the root of the library is selected. Enter the name of the new folder into the **Folder name** field and click **OK**.

Repeat the procedure so that you have the following four folders in the root of your library:

- Documents
- Music
- Pictures
- Video

CMS Desk Content	My Desk Tools Administration	<u>Switch to Site Manager</u>
	Media library properties Media libraries > My Community Site Files General Security Rename Move Delete MyCommunitySiteMedia (0) MyCommunitySiteMedia (0) Music (0) Pictures (0)	

4. Now that we have the folders ready, we can start uploading some files. We will use files from the **media_library_files** folder inside the files package attached to this guide. The package can be found at <u>http://www.kentico.com/Downloads/CommunityGuide/CommunitySiteGuide_files.zip</u>. Inside the folder, you will find four sub-folders with the same names that you defined in the previous step. Each of the folders contains several files. For the purposes of this example, you don't need to upload them all. Uploading at least one file into each folder will do the job.

There are several ways how you can achieve this. You can find a detailed description of how files can be uploaded into the media libraries in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Media libraries -></u> <u>Uploading files into media libraries</u>.

Here, we will describe how you can upload files via the administration interface:

Select the target folder from the tree on the left and click the **Upload file** () icon at the top right corner of the page. In the pop-up dialog, enter the following details:

- File: enter or browse for the path to the uploaded file
- **Preview**: enter or browse for the path to the file's preview; the preview image will be displayed in the list of files on the Media page; for image files, you don't need to enter anything as the image itself will be used as the preview
- Description: enter some text describing the uploaded file

Click Save.

Files General Security		
Image: New with the second	There are no files in current directory.	Upload file
MyCommunitySiteMedia (0)		
	Description:	

Repeat the same procedure so that you have at least one file in each of the folders. Once finished, the library is ready to be published on the site.

3.3 Creating the Master page

As we have the site created and the pre-development tasks carried out, we can start defining the master page. The master page is represented by the root of the content tree. It is the page from which all other pages inherit the default content, such as the main menu, header image, etc. Like this, you can avoid laborious adding and setting of these elements at all pages. Instead, you only use them on the master page and all other pages will inherit it.

In **Step 5** of the <u>New site wizard</u>, we chose to use the **Blank master page** page template. This is the most simple master page with two web part zones. As we want the master page to be a bit more complex, we will have to modify its layout.

Further information on master pages can be found in chapters <u>The master page concept</u> and <u>Editing</u> <u>the master page</u> of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. The master page uses the **Blank master page** page template. If you made any changes to the page now, the changes would be reflected on the page template too so that the original page template definition would be overwritten and could not be reused anymore.

To prevent this, you need to save the page as a new page template. We will stick to this practice throughout the whole guide.

Go to CMS Desk -> Edit, select the master page from the content tree and switch to the Properties -> Template tab. Click the Save as new template link.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager Site: My
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview O Live site List	
🌖 My Community Site	Page Design Form Product Master page Properties	
	General	
	URLs Template	
	Metadata Template: Blank master page	Select
	Categories	
	Menu	
	Workflow	
	Versions Clone as ad-hoc template	
	Related docs	
	Linked docs	
	Security	

2. In the pop-up window, enter the following details:

- Template display name: My Community Site Master Page
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.MasterPage
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the template

Click OK.

🖉 Page template - Save	🖉 Page template - Save as new Webpage Dialog 🛛 🛛 🔀						
🔂 Save as new page template							
Template display name:	My Community Site - Master Page						
Template code name:	MyCommunitySite.MasterPage						
Template category:	My Community Site templates	~					
	This is the master page of My Community Site.	~					
Template description:							
		~					
	OK Cancel						
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_N	4yCommunitySite/CMSDesk 🧐 Local intranet						

3. Now we can start making modifications to the page. First, we will re-define the page layout so that we get more web part zones on the page. Switch to the **Master page** tab and replace the original layout in the main text area (within the *<body>* tags) with the following piece of code.

Click Save to save the changes.

```
<!-- Top info -->
<div class="zoneTopInfo">
      <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneTopInfo" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="mainDiv">
<div class="zoneTopMembership">
      <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneTopMembership" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="zoneTop">
      <cc1:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneTopImage" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="zoneTopMenu">
      <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneTopMenu" runat="server" />
      <div class="clear">&nbsp;</div>
</div>
<div class="zoneMain">
      <cc1:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneContent" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="zoneBottom">
      <cc1:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneBottom" runat="server" />
</div>
</div>
```

4. If you switch to the **Design** tab now, you should see that the master page has been populated with several web part zones. The layout is now ready and we can start populating the page with web parts.

Page	Design	Form F	Product	Master page	Properties			🗹 Di	splay web part content
▼ /-p	bage template:	My Comm	unity Site	- Master Pag	e				
zone	eTopInfo	_	_						4
▼ zor	neTopMembers	ship							¢
7 201	neTopImage								4
T 201	neTopMenu								4
▼ zor	neContent					 	 	 	4

5. Let's start from the top where the logon bar with links to CMS Desk and Site Manager is located.

Click the Add web part (+) icon of zoneTopInfo. In the pop-up window, choose the Text -> Static text web part and click OK.

In the web part properties window, you only need to set the value of the **Text** property. Use the following code for the value:

<div style="border: 1px solid #cecfce;background:#f7f3ef;color:#555555;fontweight:bold;padding:3px;font-size:10px;text-align:center"> Sign in to CMS Desk. Sign in to CMS Desk. Sign in to CMS Site Manager. The default account is administrator with blank password. </div>

Leave the rest of the properties at their default values and click **OK**. You should see the logon bar appear in the web part zone.

zoneTopInfo	
▼ statictext 🔗 Sign in to <u>CMS Desk</u> . Sign in to <u>CMS Site Man</u>	ager. The default account is administrator with blank password.

6. Let's move on to **zoneTopMemebership**. This web part zone will contain the sign in/out link, link to the current user's private messaging inbox, link to the current user's profile editing page and information about the current user with link to her public profile.

Click the **Add web part** (+) icon, choose the **Membership -> Sign out button** web part and click **OK**. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values:

- Show as link: enabled
- Button text for sign out: Sign out
- Show only when authenticated: disabled
- Sign in page path: /Logon
- Return page path: /Home
- Content before: <div class="signOut">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

Click the Add web part (+) icon again, choose the Messaging -> Messaging info panel web part and click OK. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values:

- Display to roles: _authenticated_
- Inbox link URL: ~/Members/{%UserName|(encode)true%}/Messages.aspx
- Show outbox: disabled
- Show new message: disabled
- Content before: <div class="messagesPanel">
- Content after: " | </div>" (do not enter the parentheses, these are here to indicate that the string begins with a blank space)

Click OK.

Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, this time, choose the **Text -> Static HTML** web part and click **OK**. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at their default values:

- Display to roles: _authenticated_
- Content before: <div class="myAccountInfo">
- Content after: " | </div>" (do not enter the parentheses, these are here to indicate that the string begins with a blank space)
- Text: place the cursor into the text area, click the Source (E) icon at the WYSIWYG editor and replace the original HTML code with the following code:

```
<a title="My profile" href="/KenticoCMS_40/Members/{%CurrentUser.UserName|(encode)true%}/Management.aspx">Edit my profile</a>
```

Click OK.

Click the Add web part (+) icon again and finally choose the **Membership -> Current user** web part. Click **OK**. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at their default values:

- Authenticated URL link: ~/Members/{%CurrentUser.UserName|(encode)true%}.aspx
- User text CSS class: userName
- Content before: <div class="currentUser">
- Content after: " | </div>" (do not enter the parentheses, these are here to indicate that the string begins with a blank space)

Click OK.

7. Next on is the **zoneTopImage** web part zone, where the header image should be placed. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of this web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable image** web part. Set its following properties, the rest can be left at their default values:

- Image width: 960
- Image height: 148
- Alternate text: Community Site

Click OK.

Now switch to the **Page** tab. The added web part is represented here only by the two link buttons as in the screenshot below. Click the **Select** button of the added web part.



7. In the pop-up window, select the previously uploaded **community_header_img.jpg** and click the **Paste image** link.



8. The header image is now at its place. Click **Save** to save the master page.



9. Now we need to populate the **zoneTopMenu** web part zone where the search box and the main menu will reside. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of this web part zone and choose the **Full-text search -> Search box** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, the rest can be left at their default values:

- Disable view state: enabled
- Search button text: Search
- Search button CSS class: buttonSearch
- Search textbox CSS class: inputSearch
- Search results page URL: ~/Search.aspx
- Show search label: disabled

Click OK.

10. Let's add the main menu now. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneTopMenu** web part zone again and choose the **Navigation -> CSS list menu** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, the rest can be left at their default values:

- Path: /%
- Document types: CMS.MenuItem; CMS.Blog
- Maximum nesting level: 1
- Render CSS classes: enabled
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled

11. The **zoneContent** web part zone is where content of all the pages will be loaded. To achieve this behavior, you need to place the **Page placeholder** web part into the web part zone. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon and choose the **General -> Page placeholder** web part. You can leave all its properties at their default values and click **OK**.

12. Finally, we will add the **Kentico logo** into the **zoneBottom** web part zone. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon and choose the **General -> Powered by Kentico** web part. Replace the value of the Text property with the following code:

Click OK.

13. And that's us finished with the master page. If you switch to the **Live site** mode now, you should see the page appear as in the screenshot below. The main menu is not visible yet as there are no pages defined. The rest of the page is already at its required appearance. Content of all site's pages will be loaded into the main white zone where the **Page placeholder** web part resides.



3.4 Creating the Search page

In the previous chapter, you have defined the master page. In the ninth step, you placed the **Search box** web part next to the main menu and set its **Search results page URL** property to ~/Search.aspx. This is where the user will be redirected after submitting the search request and where the search results will be displayed. On this page, users will also be able to perform full-text search with extended options using the **Search dialog with results** web part.

Further information on Kentico CMS Search Engine can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -</u> > <u>Search Engine -> Overview</u>.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy	Move Up	J Down	Edit Rreview O Live site List
My Community 9	Site		My Community Site
U Piles			New document
			Please select new document type:
			. Diag
			Link an existing document

2. Choose to **Create a blank page** using the **Simple** layout. For **Page name**, enter *Search* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Edit template properties** link.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Admi	inistration		Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov	-	J Down	<mark>7</mark> Edit	Rreview	🧿 Live site 📃 List		
⊡ Wy Community Site ⊕ Diles Iles Iles			Page De	sign Form Propert	ies		
Search			General URLs				
			Template				
			Metadata	Template:	Ad-hoc: Search		Select
			Categories		_🛃 Save as new template		
			Menu		Nherit template		
		Workflow			ר		
			Versions		_ <u>IEdit template properties</u>	J	
			Related docs	, Inherit conten	ŀ		
			Linked docs		 O Use page template settings Do not inherit any content 		
		4	Security		 Select inherited levels 		

4. In the pop-up **Page template properties** window, switch to the **Layout** tab and replace the original layout with the following code:

Click Save.

Page Templates Webpage Dialog	\mathbf{X}
Page template properties	(^
Templates + Ad-hoc: Search	
General Layout Web parts Header Documents	
Save Gheck out to file	_
Check out the layout to file c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite\CMSAdhocTemplateLayouts\5ff52804-a479- 49f9-96b8-26fef5af2a30.ascx to edit the layout externally.	Ш
O Use shared layout	
Blank master page layout	
<pre><div class="subcontentDiv"> <div class="zoneCenterHome"></div></div></pre>	
<cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneCenter" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone>	
snbsp;	
	~
	>
http://localhost/KenticoCM5_MyCommunitySite/CM5SiteManager/Development/PageTemplates/PageTem 🍤 Local intranet	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. You should see one web part zone named **zoneCenter** on the page, just as you defined by the layout above. Let's add some heading text first. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of this web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. In the web part properties window, set the following values. The rest of the properties can be left at the default values:

• Text: <h1 class="header">Search results</h1>

Click OK.



6. Displaying search results and the search function itself will be achieved using the **Search dialog** with results web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again and choose the **Full-text search -> Search dialog with results** web part. In the web part properties window, enter the following values. The rest of the properties can be left at their default values:

- Paging mode: Postback
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Content padding
- Content after:

Click OK.

From this moment on, if you switch to the Live site, the page should be fully functional. Try searching both using the **Search box** next to the main menu and the **Search dialog with results** web part. Use e.g. *community* as the keyword, since this word is included in two previously uploaded images' names and the master page's name. You will get the results as in the following screenshot.

	Current user: Global Administrator (administrator) Edit my profile Inbox Sign out
Community Starter site	Search
Search results	
Search for: Community Go Search mode: Any Word	
▶ <u>community header_img</u> Path: /Files/community_header_img	
▶ <u>community_home_img</u> Path: /Files/community_home_img	
▶∠ Path: /	

7. We don't want the Search page to be displayed in the main menu. To prevent this, select the page in **CMS Desk** and switch to the **Properties -> Menu** tab. Disable the **Show in navigation** check-box and click **Save**.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration	1	<u>Switch to Site Manager</u>	Site:
New Delete Copy	Move Up	Jown	Edit	🔪 Preview 🧿 Live site 🚍 List		
🖃 🌖 My Community Sit	ie	-	Page Design	Form Properties		
⊕			General	Save		
E Logon page			Template			
			Metadata	Menu caption:		
			Categories	Show in navigation:		
			Menu	Show in sitemap:		

8. Finally, we will save the page as a page template so that it can be reused in the future. This is a good practice to avoid repeating laborious task. Switch to the **Edit** mode and go to the **Properties -> Template** tab. Click the **Save as new template** link and enter the following details:

- Template display name: My Community Site Search page
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.SearchPage
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click **OK**. The page is now saved as a new page template and can be reused when creating new pages with similar layout or content.

CMS Desk Content My D	sk Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manag	er Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Move Up Dow	Edit Preview	O Live site 📃 List	
New Delete Copy Move Up Dow My Community Site Blogs Files Copon page Search Page template - Save as new Wel Save as new page template Template display name: My Community Template code name: MyCommunity Template category: My Community	Page Design Form Propert General Save URLs Save URLs Template Metadata Template: page Dialog Site - Search page Site - Search Page Site search Page Site Search Page Site Search Page Site Search Page Search Page Search page of My	My Community Site - Search page	Select
OK	15Desk 👻 Local intranet		
3.5 Creating the Logon page

On the Master page, we placed the **Sign out button** web part and set its **Sign in page path** property to */Logon*. This is where the user will be redirected in order to sign in. This can also happen in other cases such as when a user tries to access a section which is available only to authorized users.

The page will provide the sing-in functionality via the **Logon form** web part, as well as the possibility to register for anonymous site visitors, which will be achieved using the **Custom registration form** web part.

Information about the Custom registration form and how you can modify the appearance of the form can be found in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content My Des	Tools Administration	<u>Switch to Site Manager</u>
	Dive Up Down	Edit Review O Live site List	
- My Community Site		My Community Site	
⊕ Piles		New document Please select new document type: Page (menu item) Blog Folder	
		Link an existing document	

2. Choose to **Create a blank page** using the **Simple** layout. For **Page name**, enter *Logon page* and click **Save**.



© 2006 Kentico Software

CMS Desk Content My	Desk	Tools Administratio	n	Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Community
	} wn	Edit	🔍 Preview 💽 Live site 📃 List		
⊡· 🌍 My Community Site ⊕· 🍃 Files		Page Design	Form Properties		
		General	Save		
		URLs			
		Template			
		Metadata	Template: Ad-hoc: Logon page		Select
		Categories	_ 🛃 Save as new template		
		Menu	Nherit template		
		Workflow		ר	
		Versions	_ Edit template properties	J	
		Related docs	to be offerende out		
		Linked docs	Inherit content:	3	
	4	Security	 Do not inherit any content Select inherited levels 		

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Edit template properties** link.

4. In the pop-up **Page template properties** window, switch to the **Layout** tab and replace the original layout with the following code:

```
<!-- Container -->
<div class="logonReg">
<!-- Left zone -->
<div class="zoneLeft" style="width: 50%; float: left;">
<div style="width: 270px; margin: 30px 0px 10px 90px;">
<ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneLeft" runat="server" />
</div>
</div>
<!-- Right zone -->
<div class="zoneRight" style="width: 50%; float: left;">
<div style="width: 280px; margin: 30px auto;">
<ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneRight" runat="server" />
</div>
</div>
</div>
```

Click Save.

🖉 Page Templates Webpage Dialog	X
🖄 Page template properties	2
Templates + Ad-hoc: Logon page	
General Layout Web parts Header Documents	
Save 6 Check out to file	^
Check out the layout to file c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite\CMSAdhocTemplateLayouts\e1517ec3-2d02-	
4034-bb3f-9caa1c241465.ascx to edit the layout externally.	_
O Use shared layout	
Blank master page layout	
 Use custom layout 	
<pre><!-- Container--></pre>	
<pre><div class="logonReg"></div></pre>	
Left zone	
<pre><div class="zoneLeft" style="width: 50%; float: left;"></div></pre>	
<pre><div style="width: 270px; margin: 30px 0px 10px 90px;"></div></pre>	
<cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneLeft" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone>	
Right zone	
<pre><div class="zoneRight" style="width: 50%; float: left;"></div></pre>	
<pre><div style="width: 280px; margin: 30px auto;"></div></pre>	
<pre><cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneRight" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone></pre>	
	~
ittp://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite/CMSSiteManager/Development/PageTemplates/PageTem 🕙 Local intranet	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. You should see two web part zones on the page - **zoneLeft** and **zoneRight** - just as you defined by the layout code above. The left web part zone will host the logon form, the registration form will be placed in the right one. Click the **Add web part** (-) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Membership** -> **Logon form** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, the rest can be left at their default values:

- Default target URL: ~/Home.aspx
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Sign in
- Content before: <div style="min-height: 160px;height:auto">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

6. User registration will be achieved using the **Custom registration form** web part. This web part has no default appearance - the way it will look like is defined by an **alternative form** of the **cms.user** system table. We will use the pre-defined **Registration form** alternative form. However, you can customize the alternative form according to your needs, as described <u>here</u>, or even create your own form a similar way.

First, click the Add web part (+) icon of the zoneRight web part zone and choose the Membership - > Custom registration form web part. Set the following properties of the web part, all other properties can be left at their default values:

- Alternative form: cms.user.RegistrationForm
- Redirect to URL: ~/Members/{%CMSContext.CurrentUser.UserName%}.aspx
- Registration error message: There was an error during registration. Please see details below.
- E-mail confirmation page: ~/Special-pages/Registration-approval.aspx
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Join the community

7. If you switch to the **Live site** mode, you should see the following appearance of the page.

Logon page	Search		Search
Sigr	nin	Join the community	
User	r name:	User name:	
Pass	sword:	First name:	
	Remember me	Last name:	
	Log on	E-mail:	
Forg	otten password	Password:	
		Confirm password:	
		Gender: O Male O Female	
		Register	



- 8. Switch back to the **Edit** mode and go to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter the following details:
- Document alias: Logon
- Document URL path: /Join

Click Save.

CMS Desk Content My Desi	Tools Administration Switch to Site Manager Si
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview O Live site List
My Community Site Files Files Cogon page	Page Design Form Properties
Search	URLs Save
	Template Path Metadata Document alias: Logon
	Categories Document URL path: /Join
	Menu Use custom URL path
	Versions Extended properties
	Related docs URL extensions: Track campaign:
	Linked docs

9. We don't want the Logon page to be displayed in the menu. Go to the **Properties -> Menu** tab and disable the **Show in navigation** check-box. Click **Save**.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administratio	n		<u>Switch to Site Manager</u>	Site:
New Delete Copy	Move Up	J Down	Edit	C Preview O Live	site 📃 List		
🖃 🌖 My Community Si	te		Page Design	Form Propertias			
🕕 📂 Files			General URLs	_ <mark></mark>			
E Logon page			Template				
			Metadata	Menu caption:			
			Categories	Show in navigation:			
			Menu Workflow	Show in sitemap:			

10. Finally, we will save the page as a page template for further re-usability. Go to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details:

- Template display name: My Community Site Logon Page
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.LogonPage
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administrati	on			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mo	ve Up	Down	🔁 Edit	Preview	Live site	List		
My Community Site			Page Design General URLs Template	Form Proper				Select
Page template - Save			Metadata e Dialog	Template.	Ad-hoc: Logo	new template		066601
Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	MyComm My Comm	unitySite.	e - Logon Page LogonPage e templates My Community S	V Site.	t ③ Use page	<u>plate properties</u> template settings erit any content erited levels		
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	OK IyCommunity		Cancel					

3.6 Creating the Home page

In this chapter, you will see how to create the Home page. This is the initial landing page - the page that the site visitors will see at first when they enter the URL of your site into the browser. It is important to set the alias path of this page in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Web site -> Default alias path**, as described <u>here</u>.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	<u>Switch to Site Manager</u>
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Review Stree List	
My Community Site My Community Site	My Community Site	
E Logon page	New document Please select new document type: Please (menu item)	
	. <mark> 2² Blog</mark> 22 Folder	
	Link an existing document	

2. Choose to **Create a blank page** using the **Simple** layout. For **Page name**, enter *Home* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk	nt My Desk T	ools Administration	Switch to Site Manager Site: My
New Delete Copy Move U		Zedit 🔍 Preview 💽 Live site 📃 List	
🖃 🌍 My Community Site	м	y Community Site	
🕕 🎾 Files 	6	Save and create another Spell check	
		Page name: Home	
		🔿 Use page template 🔿 Inherit from parent page 💿 (Create a blank page
		Blank master page layout Corporate Site Master Page layout Corporate Site Master Page with Top Menu Grid 2x2 cells Grid 3x2 cells (CSS) Grid 3x2 cells (CSS) Simple Three columns Three columns (CSS) Top row, three columns, bottom row Top row, three columns, bottom row Top row, three columns, bottom row Top row, two columns, bottom row Top columns - 20/80 Two columns - 20/80 Two columns - 20/80 Two columns - 30/70 Two columns - 30/70 Two columns - 70/30 Two columns - 70/30 Two columns - 80/20 Two columns, three columns Two columns, three columns	

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Edit template properties** link.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administratio	n		Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov		J Down	Edit	Rreview	💽 Live site 📃 List		
My Community Site Piles Files Files Cogon page Search			General URLs	Form Properti	25		
			Template Metadata Categories	Template:	Ad-hoc: Home		Select
			Menu Workflow Versions	(<u>Edit template</u>		
		4	Related docs Linked docs Security	Inherit content:	 Use page template settings Do not inherit any content Select inherited levels 		

4. In the pop-up **Page template properties** window, switch to the **Layout** tab and replace the original layout with the following code:

```
<div class="subcontentDiv">
<div class="zoneCenterHomePage">
<div class="centerLeft">
      <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneCenterLeft" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="centerRight">
      <ccl:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneCenterRight" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="clear">&nbsp;</div>
<div class="centerHome">
      <div class="left">
      <cc1:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneCenterBottomLeft" runat="server" />
      </div>
      <div class="right">
      <cc1:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneCenterBottomRight" runat="server" />
      </div>
      <div class="clear">&nbsp;</div>
</div>
</div>
<div class="zoneRight">
      <cc1:CMSWebPartZone ID="zoneRight" runat="server" />
</div>
<div class="clear">&nbsp;</div>
</div>
```

Click Save.

🙆 Page Templates Webpage Dialog	×
Page template properties	2
Templates > Ad-hoc: Home	
General Layout Web parts Header Documents	
Save G Check out to file	^
Check out the layout to file c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite\CMSAdhocTemplateLayouts\4c9216ef-2411- 44c6-979d-5bfb6334903a.ascx to edit the layout externally.	
The changes were saved.	
O Use shared layout	
Blank master page layout	=
Use custom layout	
<pre><div class="subcontentDiv"></div></pre>	
<pre><div class="zoneCenterHomePage"> </div></pre>	
<pre><div class="centerRight"></div></pre>	
<pre><cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneCenterRight" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone> </pre>	_
<pre><div class="clear"> </div></pre>	
<div class="centerHome"></div>	
<pre><div class="left"></div></pre>	
<cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneCenterBottomLeft" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone>	~
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite/CMSSiteManager/Development/PageTemplates/PageTem SQ Local intranet	:

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. You should see an empty page with five web part zones. Let's start with **zoneRight**, where the right side column with various info boxes will be placed. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> Logon miniform** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Display to roles: _notauthenticated_
- Logon failure text: Error logging in.
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box
- Web part container title: Sign in

Click **OK**. The next web part to add is the handy **Shortcuts** web part, displaying shortcuts to various actions and sections depending on the current context. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Community -> Shortcuts** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Display Join/Leave the group link: disabled
- Display Friendship links: disabled
- Display Add to contact list link: disabled
- Display Add to ignore list link: disabled
- Display manage group link: disabled
- Display Sign in link: disabled
- My messages path: /Members/{%UserName|(encode)true%}/Messages
- My friends path: /Members/{%UserName|(encode)true%}/Friends

- My invitations path: /Members/{%UserName|(encode)true%}/Invitations
- Sign out path: /Home
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box
- Web part container title: Shortcuts

Click **OK**. Let's go on with the scrolling news. This will be the **Scrolling text** web part set up so that it displays news from the News section. The News section will be created later on in this guide. Click the **Add web part** () icon again, choose the **Listings and viewers -> Scrolling text** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Path: /News/%
- Document types: CMS.News
- ORDER BY expression: NewsReleaseDate DESC
- Select top N documents: 5
- Transformation: CMS.News.Preview
- Cache dependencies: nodes|{%currentsite.sitename|(tolower)%}|cms.news|all
- Width (px): 150
- Height (px): 150
- Script stop time (milliseconds):4000
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box
- Web part container title: Latest News

Leave the rest of the properties at their default values and click **OK**.

So now we have a web part displaying the latest five news items. Let's have a similar info box displaying the latest groups. Again, the Groups section is not created yet, but we will get to it later in this guide. Click the **Add web part** (-) icon again, choose the **Community -> Groups viewer** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Disable view state: enabled
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.GroupsPreviewList
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: GroupCreatedWhen DESC
- No record found text: There are currently no groups.
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: Latest Groups
- Content after: <div class="clear"></div> <div>View all</div>

Leave the rest of the properties at their default values and click OK.

One more info box to go. This time, it will be displaying three latest registered site users. Click the **Add web part** (-) icon again, choose the **Membership -> Users viewer** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Disable view state: enabled
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersPreviewList
- No record found text: There are currently no members.
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: UserCreated DESC
- Selected columns: UserID,UserNickName,UserGender,UserDateOfBirth,UserAvatarID, UserCreated,UserName,AvatarGuid
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled

My profile

- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: Latest Members
- Content after: <div class="clear"></div>View all</div>

Leave the rest of the properties at their default values and click **OK**.

That's us finished with the info boxes in this web part zone. However, we will place the sample poll created in this chapter to the bottom of the web part zone. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon for the last time, choose the **Polls -> Poll** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Poll name: Continents
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box
- Web part container title: Poll

Click **OK**. That's us finished with the **zoneRight** web part zone. Now we can move on and populate the other web part zones.

6. We will place the **community_home_img.jpg** image, which we uploaded earlier in <u>this chapter</u>, to the **zoneCenterRight** web part zone. Click the **Add web part** () icon, choose the **Text -> Editable image** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

• Alternate text: Community photo

Click OK.

Switch to the Page tab and click the Select link of the Editable image web part.



© 2006 Kentico Software

Select the file from the content tree and click the **Paste image** link. Click **Save** to save the content of the page.



7. The **zoneCenterLeft** web part zone will host the welcome text and links for sing-in and registration. Click the **Add web part** () icon, choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part and click **OK**. You can left all web part's properties at the default values and click **OK**.

8. Switch to the **Page** tab. Using the WYSIWYG editor, try to achieve the same result that you can see in the screenshot below. You can find detailed description of the WYSIWYG editor's capabilities in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Content management -> WYSIWYG editor</u>. However, you can see the controls that you will use highlighted in the screenshot.

You will need to write the heading and change its **Format** to *Heading 1*. Then you will need to add a table with one row and two columns. Set the **Border size** property of the table to 0. You will insert the images into the table. Then you will select each of the images and add a hyperlink to the **Logon page** to it. Then you will have to select both of the images in the table and choose the center alignment. Finally, you will have to type the remaining text and set its **Format** to *Normal*.



9. Two web part zones are remaining. In the **zoneCenterBottomLeft**, we will place a repeater displaying extracts from the latest blog posts. The **Blogs** section from that the extracts will be displayed will be created later in this guide. Click the **Add web part** (-) icon, choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part and click **OK**. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at their default values:

- Disable view state: enabled
- Path: /Blogs/%
- Document types: CMS.BlogPost
- ORDER BY expression: BlogPostDate DESC
- Select top N documents: 6
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.HomeBlogPostsCenter
- Cache dependencies: nodes|{%CurrentSite.SiteName|(tolower)%}|cms.blogpost|all
- No record found text: There are currently no posts.
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Latest blog posts

Click OK.

10. Last but not least, we will place a similar repeater to the **zoneCenterBottomRight** web part zone. This repeater will be displaying latest forum posts. The **Forums** section will be created later in this guide. Click the **Add web part** (-) icon, choose the **Forums -> Forum posts viewer** web part and click **OK**. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at their default values:

- Disable view state: enabled
- Top N: 6
- Order by: PostTime DESC
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled

- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Latest forum posts

11. You have just finished creating the **Home** page. Most of the web parts are not displaying any content because the related sections of the web are not created yet. However, as you will be creating these sections further in this guide, you will see the related content appear on the home page. In the **Design** tab, the page should look as in the following screenshot.

zoneCenterLeft	🝷 zoneCenterRight 👘	 zoneRight
vercome to our	▼ EditableImage ③	 ▼ logonminiform ③ ▼ Shortcuts ④
community		Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile
Sign in » Join now »		<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> My invitations
This community site is a virtual meeting point for those who		Create a new group Create a new blog
like travelling, adventure, discovering new places, meeting new people and all the things related to it.		Sign out
If you are interested in this sort of things, don't hesitate and join now!		 ScrollingText @ Latest News
▼ zoneCenterBottomLeft 🔮	 ▼ zoneCenterBottomRight ◆ ForumPostsViewer ♂ 	
		- CroupsViewer
		GroupsViewer
		UsersViewer Latest members
		UsersViewer
		UsersViewer Latest members Admin Gender: N/A Age: 0 View all poll
		UsersViewer Latest members Admin Gender: N/A Age: 0 View all Poll Which continent are
		UsersViewer Latest members Admin Gender: N/A Age: 0 View all poll
		UsersViewer Latest members Admin Gender: N/A Age: 0 View all Poll Which continent are planning to visit du your next trip? Africa America
		UsersViewer Latest members Admin Gender: N/A Age: 0 View all Poll Which continent are planning to visit du your next trip? OAfrica OAsia
		UsersViewer Latest members Admin Gender: N/A Age: 0 View all Poll Which continent are planning to visit du your next trip? Africa America

12. The last step is to save the page as a page template for further reusability. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details:

- Template display name: My Community Site Home page
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.HomePage
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administratio	n		Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov		J Down	2	Edit	Preview	Live site List		
My Community Site Blogs Files Home Cogon page Search			Page Gene URLs Tem Meta	ral	Form Propert	Ad-hoc: Home		Select
Page template - Save Save as new page			e Dialo	9g	×	Save as new template	כ	
Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	remplate code name: MyCommunitySite.HomePage remplate category: My Community Site templates This is the Home page of My Community Site.					 Edit template properties Use page template setting Do not inherit any content Select inherited levels 		
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	http://localhost/KenticoCM5_MyCommunitySite/CM5Desk 🧐 Local intranet 🛛 🙀							

3.7 Creating a starter page template

Many pages on the site will have the same layout and contain the same web parts. To prevent repeating the same development tasks again and again, it is a good practice to create a starter page template. This template will contain the required layout with two web part zones and three web parts - **Editable text** for heading in **zoneLeft** web part zone and the **Logon mini form** and **Shortcuts** web parts in **zoneRight** web part zone.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Choose to **Create a blank page** using the **Simple** layout. For **Page name**, enter *starter page template* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Edit template properties** link.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administratio	tion Switch to Site Manager Site: My Com	nmun
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Z Edit (Review Dive site List	
⊡· 🕘 My Community Site ⊕· 🔁 Files	Page Design	Form Properties	
E Home	General	Save	
······································	URLs		
🔤 starter page template	Template		
	Metadata	Template: Ad-hoc: starter page template Select]
	Categories	Save as new template	
	Menu		
	Workflow	Inherit template	
	Versions	Edit template properties	
	Related docs		
	Linked docs	Inherit content:	
	Security	Use page template settings Do not inherit any content	
		 Select inherited levels 	

4. In the pop-up window, switch to the **Layout** tab and replace the original layout with the following code:

Click Save.

🙆 Page Templates Webpage Dialog	×
Page template properties	2
Templates + Ad-hoc: starter page template	
General Layout Web parts Header Documents	
Save G Check out to file	^
Check out the layout to file c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite\CMSAdhocTemplateLayouts\0ad8b7ba-6395- 4918-b261-bc268de03d6d.ascx to edit the layout externally.	
O Use shared layout	
Blank master page layout	
 Use custom layout 	=
<div class="subcontentDiv"></div>	
<pre><div class="zoneCenterHome"></div></pre>	
<div class="zoneRight"> <cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneRight" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone></div>	
<div class="clear"> </div>	
(/11/)	_
	~
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite/CMSSiteManager/Development/PageTemplates/PageTemp 😏 Local intranet	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. You can see a page layout with two web part zones - **zoneCenter** and **zoneRight**. This layout is common to many of pages that we will create on the site. In the **zoneCenter** web part zone, all of the pages will contain a heading, provided by the **Editable text** web part. We will add the web part now. Click the **Add web part** () icon, choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Editable region type: Text box
- Content before: <h1 class="header">
- Content after: </h1>

Click OK.

6. In the zone **zoneRight** web part zone, two web parts will be common to all the pages. The first of them will be the **Logon mini form**. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> Logon mini form** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Display to roles: _notauthenticated_
- Logon failure text: Error logging in.
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box
- Web part container title: Sign in

Click OK.

7. The next web part common on all the pages is the handy **Shortcuts** web part, displaying shortcuts to various actions and sections depending on the current context. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Community -> Shortcuts** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties. Leave the rest of the properties at the default values:

- Display Join/Leave the group link: disabled
- Display Friendship links: disabled
- Display Add to contact list link: disabled
- Display Add to ignore list link: disabled
- Display manage group link: disabled
- Display Sign in link: disabled
- My messages path: /Members/{%UserName|(encode)true%}/Messages
- My friends path: /Members/{%UserName|(encode)true%}/Friends
- My invitations path: /Members/{%UserName|(encode)true%}/Invitations
- Sign out path: /Home
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box
- Web part container title: Shortcuts

Click OK.

When you are finished, the page in **Design** tab should look as in the following screenshot.

/starter page template - page template; ad-hoc	
zoneCenter	▼ zoneRight
▼ editabletext ③	
	Shortcuts
	My profile Edit my profile
	<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> <u>My invitations</u>
	Create a new group
	Create a new blog
	Sian out

8. We will save the page template so that it can be reused later. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details into the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: _StarterTemplate
- Template code name: _StarterTemplate
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: enter some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration	n			Switch to Site Manager	Site:	My Co
New Delete Copy Move	_	J Down	Edit	C Preview	Live site	Eist			
My Community Site Files	as new -		Page Design General URLs Template Metadata ge Dialog	Form Properties	Ad-hoc: star	ter page template s new template		Selec	
Save as new p	age tem	plate			`	emplate nplate properties			
Template display name:	_StarterT	emplate				ipiale properties			
Template code name:	_StarterT	emplate							
Template category:	My Com	munity S	ite templates	*	💿 Use page	e template settings			
Template description:	of MyCo used as develor site.	ommunit s the s oment o	tarter page te ySite. It will tarting point f many pages o	be for	Ŭ	herit any content nerited levels			
http://localhost/KenticoCM5_M	Oł		Cancel						

9. As the page template is now saved, we do not need the page created in this chapter anymore. **Delete** the page from the content tree. The page template will remain saved and can be used in the future.

СМ	S Des	k	6	ontent	My Desk		
New	Delete	Сору	Move		Down		
⊡• () №	🖃 🎱 My Community Site						
主 - 尾	🗦 Files						
···· [📄 Home						
···· [🔤 Logon page						
🔤 Search							
÷	starter page template						

3.8 Creating the Blogs section

3.8.1 Creating the Blogs page

168

In this part of the guide, we will create the Blogs section. This section will allow users to read blog posts from any number of blogs. Users will also be able to create a new blog directly on the site, as well as add new blog posts. Most of this functionality is is achieved using the User contributions module web part. For more information about the module, please refer to <u>Kentico CMS Developer's</u> <u>Guide -> Module User contributions</u>. Detailed information about the Blogs module can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Blogs</u>.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration	<u>Switch to Site Manager</u>		
New Delete Copy Move	_	Jown	Edit 🔍 Preview 💽 Live site 🚍 List			
🖃 🌑 My Community Site			My Community Site			
 → Criles → Files → Files			New document Please select new document type: Page (menu item) Plog Folder			
			Link an existing document			

2. We will use the starter page template created in <u>this chapter</u> as the starting point for this page. Choose the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate**. For **Page name**, enter *Blogs* and click **Save**.



3. Go to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Blogs
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Blogs
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administrati	ion			Switch to Site Manager	Site:	My Commun
New Delete Copy Mov	e Up	Down	2 E	dit	🔍 Previ	ew	Live site List			
My Community Site Blogs Files Files Cogon page Search			Page Genera URLs Temp		Form	Properti <u>Save</u>	ies			
Page template - Save Save as new page			e Dialog	3		X	_StarterTemplate	ate		Select
Template display name: Template code name: Template category:	My Comm MyComm My Comm	unitySite.	Blogs				 Inherit template Clone as ad-hoc ter Edit template prope 			
Template description:	This is Communi			age of My	У	<	 Use page template s Do not inherit any cor 	ntent		
	OK		Can	cel		~	Select inherited levels	5		
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	yCommunity:	5ite/CMSDe	sk 🧐 Li	ocal intranet						

4. On the same tab, click the **Edit template properties** link. In the pop-up **Page template properties** window, switch to the **Layout** tab and replace the original layout with the following code:

Click Save.

Page Templates Webpage Dialog	×
Page template properties	2
Templates _StarterTemplate	
General Sites Layout Web parts Header Documents	
Save G Check out to file	^
Check out the layout to file c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite\CMSTemplateLayouts_StarterTemplate.ascx to edit the layout externally.	
O Use shared layout	
Blank master page layout	
 Use custom layout 	=
<pre><div class="subcontentDiv"></div></pre>	
<cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneCenter" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone>	
<div class="zoneRight"></div>	
<cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneRight" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone>	
<div class="clear"> </div>	
	~
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite/CMSSiteManager/Development/PageTemplates/PageTem 🧐 Local intranet	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. You should see two web part zones - **zoneLeft** and **zoneRight** - just as you defined by the layout above. Let's add web parts to the **zoneRight** web part zone first.

Below the **Shortcuts** menu, the **Tag cloud** web part will be displayed. After clicking a tag in the web part, users will be redirected to the */Blogs/Blog-posts* page, where a list of blog posts tagged with the clicked tag will be displayed. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Tagging & categories -> Tag cloud** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Show for document types: CMS.Blog;CMS.MenuItem
- Tag group name: Blogs
- Document list URL: /Blogs/Blog-posts
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Orange Box
- Web part container title: Tag cloud

Click OK.

Below the Tag cloud, we will place an info-box displaying links to 3 latest blogs on the site. This will be achieved using the **Repeater** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

• Web part control ID: LatestBlogs

- Disable view state: enabled
- Show for document types: CMS.MenuItem
- Path: ./%
- Document types: CMS.Blog
- Select top N documents: 3
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogsListRight
- Cache dependencies: nodes|{%CurrentSite.SiteName|(tolower)%}|cms.blog|all
- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: Recent blogs
- Content after: View all blogs

Next on is another similar info box. This one will be displaying latest blog comments. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Blogs -> Blogs comments viewer** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.BlogComments
- Selected columns: CommentPostDocumentID,CommentDate,CommentUserName,CommentText
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no comments.
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: Latest blog comments

Click OK.

The last web part in the right column will be the **Posts archive** web part. This web part will be displaying links to the latest blog months. The web part will not be displayed on this page, but only when a blog, blog month or blog post is displayed. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Blogs -> Post archive** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Show for document types: cms.blog;cms.blogmonth;cms.blogpost
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: No data in archive.
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: Post archive

Click OK.

The **zoneLeft** web part zone is finished. You can see the desired appearance in the screenshot below. Notice that some of the web parts are not displaying any content yet. This is because there is no content to be displayed yet, but when the content is added, all the web parts should work fine. You will see later on in this guide.

🔻 zoneRight 🔶
🔻 logonminiform 🧬
Shortcuts
<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile
My messages
<u>My friends</u> My invitations
Create a new group
Create a new blog
<u>Sign out</u>
▼ TagCloud 🔗
▼ LatestBlogs 🞯
 BlogsCommentsViewer
Latest blog comments
There are currently no
comments.
🔻 PostArchive 🧬

We will move to the **zoneCenter** web part zone now. First, let's enter the heading text. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Recent blog posts* into the text box representing the web part. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Home	
Recentb	olog posts	

The heading that we've just added will be displayed only on the title page. When a content of a blog is displayed, the heading will be replaced by breadcrumbs of the same size. These breadcrumbs will be clickable and will indicate the current position in the blogs hierarchy. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Navigation -> Breadcrumbs** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Show for document types: CMS.BlogMonth;CMS.BlogPost;CMS.Blog
- Starting path: /Blogs
- Class names: CMS.Blog;CMS.BlogMonth;CMS.MenuItem
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Content before: <div class="blogsTopBreadcrumbs">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

Now we have the heading ready, so let's get to the three web parts enabling users to edit blog properties, create blog posts and edit blog posts directly on the live site. As mentioned above, this functionality will be achieved using the **User contributions** module web parts.

The first one will be used for blogs editing. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **User contributions -> Edit contribution** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: EditBlog
- Show for document types: CMS.Blog
- Alternative form name: CMS.Blog.EditBlog
- Edit button label: Edit blog
- Allow delete: disabled
- Content before: <div class="EditPanel">
- Content after: </div>

The second of the User contributions web parts will be used to enable users edit blog posts. Click the Add web part (+) icon again, choose the User contributions -> Edit contribution web part and click OK. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: EditBlogPost
- Show for document types: CMS.BlogPost
- Alternative form name: CMS.BlogPost.EditBlogPost
- Content before: <div class="EditPanel">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

The last of the three User contributions web parts will enable adding of new blog posts. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **User contributions -> Edit contribution** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: NewBlogPost
- Show for document types: CMS.Blog
- Path for new documents: "." (do not include the parentheses, these are only indicating that you should enter the dot only)
- Allowed new document types: CMS.BlogPost
- Alternative form name: CMS.BlogPost.EditBlogPost
- Display a list of documents: disabled
- New item button label: New blog post
- List button label: My blog posts
- Allow delete: disabled
- Content before: <div class="EditPanel">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

Now we will add two repeaters with similar settings. The first repeater will be displayed only on Blog month documents and will display a list of all blog posts in the month, paged by 5 posts. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: rptMonthPosts
- Show for document types: cms.blogmonth
- Path: ./%
- Document types: CMS.BlogPost
- **Transformation**: Community.Transformations.BlogsAllBlogsPosts
- Selected item transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogPostDetail

- Enable paging: enabled
- Page size: 5
- Cache dependencies: nodes|{%CurrentSite.SiteName|(tolower)%}|cms.blogpost|all

The second repeater will display a list of 5 latest blog posts on the Blogs title page (the page that you are creating now) and on a particular blog's title page. The repeater will also be used for displaying particular blog posts. Click the **Add web part** () icon again, choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: rptLatestPostsAllBlogs
- Disable view state: enabled
- Show for document types: CMS.Blog;CMS.BlogPost;CMS.MenuItem
- Path: ./%
- **Document types**: cms.blogpost
- Order by expression: BlogPostDate DESC
- Select top N documents: 5
- **Transformation**: Community.Transformations.BlogsAllBlogsPosts
- Selected item transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogPostDetail
- Cache dependencies: nodes|{%CurrentSite.SiteName|(tolower)%}|cms.blogpost|all

Click OK.

Three web parts remaining. The next one will be the **Content rating** web part. It will be displayed only for blog posts and will enable users to rate the content of the blog posts. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Content rating -> Content rating** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Show for document types: CMS.BlogPost
- Content before: <div class="blogContentRating">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

The **Social bookmarking** web part will be placed below the Content rating web part and will enable users to bookmark blog posts via a large number of social bookmarking services. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Community services -> Social bookmarking** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Show for document types: CMS.BlogPost
- **Bookmarking services**: enable the check-boxes for all social bookmarking services that you want to be available
- Content after:

Click OK.

The last web part on the page will also be displayed only for blog posts. It is the **Comments view** web part, enabling users to post blog comments and displaying the comments. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon again, choose the **Blogs -> Comment view** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Show for document types: CMS.BlogPost
- Check permissions: disabled

- Comment separator: <div class="PostCommentSeparatorLine"> </div>
- Show edit button: enabled
- Enable user pictures: enabled
- User picture width: 66
- User picture height: 66
- Content before: <div class="blogComments">
- Content after: </div>

In the screenshot below, you can see the desired appearance of the page in **Design** tab. As mentioned above, no content is displayed as there is no content (no blogs, no posts, ...) on the site yet. However, as the site gets populated with content, all web parts should be fully functional.



🔻 PostArchive 🔗

3.8.2 Creating the Create page

The Create page is where users are redirected when they want to create a new blog. The page is accessible via the **Shortcuts** menu, after clicking the **Create a new blog** link. In the following example, you will learn how to create the page. We will use the **My Community Site - Blogs** page template created in the <u>previous chapter</u> so that we don't have to waste time by adding the same web parts again.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the **Blogs** page in the content tree and click the **New** icon. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	ontent My Des	CTools Administration
New Delete Copy Move	Up Down	Edit Preview I Live site I List
🖃 🌖 My Community Site		Blogs
···· 📄 Blogs		
🕕 📂 Files		New document
··· 📄 Home		
📄 Logon page		
📄 Search		Please select new document type:
		<u> Page (menu item)</u>

2. Choose the **My Community Site templates -> My Community Site - Blogs** page template. For **Page name**, enter *Create* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk	1y Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Ma	nager 🛛 Site: My Community Site 💉
New Delete Copy Move Up	J own	Edit Preview O Live site	List	
My Community Site Blogs Files Files Cogon page Search		Blogs	ill check	
		Page name: Create Use page template Inherit from parent Categories Categori		
	4	C Events C FAQs C Forums C General C Home pages C Images	no image My Community Site - Blogs	no image My Community Site - Home page
		Job openings Job openings Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates My Com	no image My Community Site - Logon Page	no image My Community Site - Master Page

3. Now we have the Create page created. It uses the **My Community Site - Blogs** page template. If we started making modifications to the page now, the page template would also get modified, so that the Blogs page would be modified too. To prevent this, we will have to save the page as a new page template before the actual modification. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Blog creation
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.BlogCreation
- **Template category**: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administrati	on			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Cor
New Delete Copy Move	_	J Down	Z Edit	C Preview	Live site	Eist		
My Community Site Greate Greate Files Files Create Logon page Search		-	Page Design General URLs Template Metadata	Form Properti		nity Site - Blogs		Select
Page template - Save Save as new page			e Dialog	X		s new template emplate		
Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	MyComn My Com This is	nunitySite munity Sit	e - Blog creation BlogCreation re templates Log creation p Site.	age of	 Edit ten Use page Do not in 	as ad-hoc template nplate properties e template settings herit any content nerited levels		
http://localhost/KenticoCM5_M	Oł		Cancel					

4. Now switch to the **Design** tab. Because the page template already contains some web parts that we will need on the page, we can focus on deleting the not-needed ones first. You can delete a web part by opening the web part's context menu (down-pointing arrow on the left) and selecting the **Remove** command.

▼ logonminiform ③
P Configure
👉 <u>Up</u>
👃 Down
Antice to zone
ୡ Duplicate web part
Remove

From the **zoneRight** web part zone, delete the **Logon miniform**, **Post archive** and **Blog comments viewer** web parts.

5. We will add two more web parts to this web part zone. The first one will be a repeater displaying the current user's blogs. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Web part control ID: repeaterYourBlogs
- Path: /Blogs/%
- Document types: CMS.Blog
- ORDER BY expression: DocumentCreatedWhen DESC
- WHERE condition: NodeOwner='{%CurrentUser.UserID%}'
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogsListRight
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- No record found text: You have currently no blogs.
- Web part container: Community Site Orange Box
- Web part container title: Your blogs

Click OK.

The second web part that we will add to the **zoneRight** web part zone is the Users viewer. We will set it up so that it displays the four most active bloggers on the site. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon and choose the **Membership -> Users viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Web part control ID: TopBloggers
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersPreviewList
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no bloggers.
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: UserBlogPosts DESC
- Select top N members: 4
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box
- Web part container title: Top bloggers

Click OK.

Now that you have the web parts in place and configured, let's just reorder them by dragging and dropping. In the result, they should be ordered as in the screenshot below:

🔻 zoneRight 🔤
🔻 Shortcuts 🞯
Shortcuts
<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile
<u>My messages</u> My friends
My invitations
Create a new group
<u>Create a new blog</u>
<u>Sign out</u>
🔻 repeaterYourBlogs 🕜
▼ LatestBlogs 🧬
▼ TagCloud 🕜
▼ TopBloggers 🕜
Top bloggers
Admin Gender: N/A Age: 0

6. In the **zoneCenter** web part zone, we will need only the **Editable text** web part at the top, hence you can remove all the other web parts in this web part zone. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Create new blog* into the web part's text box. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Home
Create n	ew blog

7. Switch back to the **Design** tab. You should see the heading displayed in the appropriate font size. The rest of the **zoneCenter** web part zone will host only another **Editable text** web part displaying some info text and the **New blog** web part. Click the **Add web part** () icon and choose the **Text** -> **Editable text** web part. You can leave all properties of the web part at their default values and click **OK**.
Switch to the **Page** tab and enter some info text into the web part's text area. You can use the following sample text:

You can create your new blog by entering the required details into the fields below. You will be able to change the entered data later. After submitting these details, you will be able to edit your blog's properties or start blogging immediately.

Click Save.

Community Site	
Create new blog	
You can create your new blog by entering the required details into the fields below. You will be able to change the entered data later. After submitting these details, you will be able to edit your blog's properties or start blogging immediately.	

8. Switch back to the **Design** tab. Let's finish the page by adding its main part - the **New blog** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon and choose the **Blogs -> New blog** web part. Set the following property of the web part, leave the rest at their default values:

• Blog parent path: /Blogs

Click **OK**. You have just finished creating the blogs creation page. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Blogs/Create - page template: My Community Site - Blog creation	2
✓ zoneCenter	✓ zoneRight ✓ Shortcuts
DescriptionText blog by entering the required details into the fields below. You will be able to change the entered data later. After submitting blog blog by entering the required details into the fields below. You will be able to change the entered data later. After submitting NewBlog NewBlog	Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages
Blog name:	My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog
Blog description:	Sign out
OK	✓ LatestBlogs ③ ✓ TagCloud ④
	TopBloggers Top bloggers Admin
	Gender: N/A

3.8.3 Creating the Blog list page

The Blog list page displays a list of all blogs on the site. This functionality will be achieved using the **Repeater** web part. The page is accessible from the **Recent blogs** repeater on the Blogs title page, by clicking the **View all blogs** link.

1. Go to CMS Desk -> Edit mode, select the Blogs page from the content tree and click New.

CMS Desk	Content My	y Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy	Move Up D	V own	Edit 💽 Preview 💽 Live site 🚍 List
🖃 🌍 My Community Sit	te		Blogs
🖃 📄 Blogs		-	
🛄 📄 Create			New document
🕕 📂 Files			New document
- 📄 Home			
📄 Logon page			Please select new document type:
E Search			E Page (menu item)

2. We will use the page template from the previous chapter so that we can save time by eliminating adding some identically configured web parts. Choose the **My Community Site templates -> My Community Site - Blog creation** page template. For **Page name**, enter *Blog list* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My	esk Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Community Site 🔊
New Delete Copy Move Up Do			
My Community Site Blogs F Blogs F Create F Files F Home F Logon page	Blogs		
Search	Page name: Blog list Image: Image: Image: Image:	create a blank page	
	FAQS	no image Imunity Site - Blog My C creation	no image

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab. We will save the page as a new page template so that the modifications made to this page will not be reflected on the Blog creation page. Click the Save as new template link and enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Blog list
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.BlogList
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administratio	n			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Move	1 Up	J Down	🔁 Ec	dit	Preview	Live site	Eist		
Template code name: N Template category: N	g e temp Ay Comm AyCommu Ay Comm	unity Site unitySite. unitySite the B1	e - Blog I BlogList e templa og lis	list taates att page o	Form Proper	My Commun Save as Inheritt Clone a Clone a Editten	nity Site - Blog cr s new template emplate as ad-hoc templat nplate properties e template setting herit any content nerited levels	<u>e</u>	Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyC	CommunityS	ite/CMSDe:	sk 🧐 Lo	cal intranet	.:				

4. Switch to the **Design** tab. Let's start with **zoneRight** web part zone. Remove the **repeaterYourBlogPosts** and **LatestBlogs** web parts. These web parts wouldn't make sense in t

Click the **Add web part** (+) icon and choose the **Membership -> Logon mini form** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Display to roles: _notauthenticated_
- Logon failure text: Error logging in.
- Web part container: Community Site Red box
- Web part container title: Sign in

Click OK.

Drag and drop the web part to the top of the web part zone, above the **Shortcuts** box. The web part zone is ready now and should look as in the screenshot below.

 zoneRight 	þ
🔻 logonminiform 💣	
Shortcuts Shortcuts	
<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile	
<u>My messages</u> My friends My invitations	
<u>Create a new group</u> Create a new blog	
Sign out	
▼ TagCloud ③	
▼ TopBloggers ③ Top bloggers	
Gender: N/A Age: 0	

5. Modifying the **zoneCenter** web part zone will also be a task of a few clicks. Firstly, remove the **DescriptionText** and **NewBlog** web parts so that the only web part remaining is the **Editable text** for the heading.

Now we will add the main part of the page - the repeater for displaying blogs. Click the **Add web part** () icon and choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values:

- Web part control ID: rptListOfBlogs
- Show for document types: CMS.MenuItem
- Path: /Blogs/%
- Document types: CMS.Blog
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogPostDetail
- Selected item transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogPostDetail
- Paging: enabled
- Page size: 5
- Cache dependencies: nodes|{%CurrentSite.SiteName|(tolower)%}|cms.blog|all

Click OK.

6. Finally, switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Blogs list* into the text field of the heading **Editable text** web part. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Home
Blogs lis	t

In the screenshot below, you can see the desired appearance of the page in **Design** tab. The page is not displaying anything yet, because there are no blogs on the site. If you create one, it will be displayed here.

/Blogs/Blog list - page template: My Community Site - Blog list	
▼ zoneCenter 🔶	▼ zoneRight 🛟
< editabletext	
▼ rptListOfBlogs @	Shortcuts
- Print Control (Print)	
	<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile
	<u>My messages</u> My friends
	My invitations
	Create a new group
	Create a new blog
	<u>Sign out</u>
	▼ TagCloud 🔗
	▼ TopBloggers ③
	Top bloggers
	Admin Gender: N/A Age: 0

3.8.4 Creating the Blog posts page

The last page in the Blogs section is the **Blog posts** page. When a user clicks a tag in the **Tag cloud** web part, she is redirected to this page. On the page, all blog posts will be displayed by the **Repeater** web part based on a querystring parameter.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the **Blogs** page from the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page** (menu item) document type.

k Tools Administration
Edit OPreview OLive site Ist
Blogs
New document
Please select new document type:
_ <u>F_Page (menu item)</u>

2. We will use the page template of the **Blog list** page created in the <u>previous chapter</u>. The page template is almost identical, only the settings of the main repeater will be modified. Choose the **My Community Site template -> My Community Site - Blog list** page template. For **Page name**, enter *Blog posts* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk	tent My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Community Site 🔊
New Delete Copy Move	Up Down	Edit Preview O Live site List		
My Community Site Blog list Files Home Logon page Search		Blogs SaveSave and create anotherSpell check Page name: Blog posts Use page template O Inherit from parent page O	Create a blank page	
			no image mmunity Site - Blog creation	no image

3. View the new page in **Page** tab. Enter *Blog posts* into the heading **Editable text** web part's text box and click **Save**.



4. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details into the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Blog posts
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.BlogPosts
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administ	ration		1	Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mo	ve Up	Jown	🔁 Edit	Rreview	🧿 Live site 📃 L	.ist		
⊡ Wy Community Site ⊡ I Blogs			Page Design	Form Proper	ties			
Blog list			General	Save				
E Create			URLs					
🖃 📂 Files			Template					
Home			Metadata	Template:	My Community Site	- Blog list		Select
🖉 Page template - Save	e as new	Webpage	e Dialog		Save as new ter	mplate		
🛃 Save as new p	age temp	olate			Inherit template			
					🗞 <u>Clone as ad-ho</u>	c template		
Template display name:	My Comm	unity Site	e - Blog posts		Edit template pr	oportion		
Template code name:	MyCommu	unitySite.	BlogPosts			openies		
Template category:	My Comm	nunity Site	e templates	~				
	This is Communit		og posts pag	e of My 📥	 Use page templa 	te settings		
Template description:	Communit	ty site	•		🔘 Do not inherit any	content		
remplate description.					 Select inherited let 	evels		
				~				
	OK		Cancel					
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	1yCommunityS	iite/CMSDe:	sk 🧐 Local intrane	t ";				

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. There is the **rptListOfBlogs** web part already on the page in the **zoneCenter** web part zone. It is configured for the purposes of the **Blog list** page, so we will have to modify its properties. Click the **Configure** () icon of the web part and set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: rptBlogPosts
- Show for document types: CMS.Blog;CMS.BlogPost;CMS.MenuItem
- Document types: cms.blogpost
- ORDER BY expression: BlogPostDate DESC
- WHERE condition:

```
({?tagid|(toint)?} = 0 AND '{?tagname?}'='') OR (DocumentID IN (SELECT
DocumentID FROM CMS_DocumentTag WHERE TagID = {?tagid|(toint)?})) OR (DocumentID
IN (SELECT DocumentID FROM CMS_DocumentTag WHERE TagID IN (SELECT TagID FROM
CMS_Tag WHERE TagName = '{?tagname?}' AND TagGroupID = {?groupid|(toint)?})))
```

- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogsAllBlogsPosts
- Selected item transformation: clear the value as it wouldn't make sense in this context
- Cache dependencies: nodes|{%CurrentSite.SiteName|(tolower)%}|cms.blogpost|all

Click OK.

The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot:

/Blogs/Blog posts - page template: My Community Site - Blog posts	
/Biogs/Biog posts - page template: My Lommunity site - Biog posts zoneCenter • editabletext @ • rptBlogPosts @	zoneRight logonminiform Shortcuts Shortcuts My profile Edk my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new droup Create a new blog Sign out

TagCloud
 TopBloggers
 Top bloggers

Admin Gender: N/A Age: 0

3.9 Creating the News page

The News page will contain a repeater displaying news. News items can be created by users with access to CMS Desk, typically content editors or site administrators. They are useful for announcing important information to all site users and visitors.

Creating the News page will be very simple. We will re-use the starter page template created in <u>this</u> <u>chapter</u> and add some web parts, mainly the **Repeater** for displaying news items.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy Move Up	Jown	Edit OPreview OLive site List
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Blog list Blog posts Create Files Home Cogon page Search		My Community Site New document Please select new document type: Image (menu item) Image (menu

2. Choose the **My Community Site templates -> _SarterTemplate** page template. For **Page name**, enter *News* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Community Site3
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview O Live site List		
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Home pages	no image	no image , Community Site - Blog creation
	····································	no image	no image

3. View the page in **Page** tab and enter *News* into the heading **Editable text** web part's text box. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Home	News	
News			

4. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details into the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site News
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.News
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administrati	on		Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Communi
	Dve Up	Down	Edit	C Preview	Live site	List	
My Community Site Blogs Files Files Cogon page News Search Page template - Save Save as new p	e as new		Page Design General URLs Template Metadata Dialog	Form Proper	ties _StarterTemplate Save as new to Print template		Select
Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	-	nitySite.N unity Site the Nev	News etemplates ws page of My	<	 <u>Clone as ad-h</u> <u>Edit template</u> <u>Use page templ</u> <u>Use page templ</u> <u>Do not inherit ar</u> <u>Select inherited</u> 	ate settings ny content	
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunitySi	ite/CMSDes	k 🧐 Local intranet				

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. Firstly, we will add a tag cloud that will display tags from the News tag group. After clicking a tag, users will be redirected to this page again, where the repeater in the **zoneCenter** web part zone will display all news items tagged with the clicked tag.Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Tagging & Categories -> Tag cloud** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at their default values:

- Show for document types: leave the field empty
- Tag group name: News
- Document list URL: /News
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Orange Box
- Web part container title: Tag cloud

Click OK.

6. Now we will add the **Content subscription** web part to enable users subscribe to receiving notifications about new news items. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Notifications -> Content subscription** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at their default values:

- Display to roles: _authenticated_
- Path: /News/%
- Document types: CMS.News
- Create event enabled: enabled
- Create event display name: Community news notification
- Create event template name: News notification
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box
- Web part container title: News notification

Click **OK**. The **zoneRight** web part zone is finished and in **Design** tab, it should look as in the screenshot below.

🔻 zoneRight 🔶
💌 logonminiform 🧬
Shortcuts Shortcuts
<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile
<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> <u>My invitations</u>
<u>Create a new group</u> <u>Create a new blog</u>
<u>Sign out</u>
▼ TagCloud 🚱
 ContentSubscription 3
News subscription
Receive the news notification to your e-mail.
E-mail:
admin@mydomainXY.coi
Subscribe

7. Now to the **zoneCenter** web part zone. The main web part will be a repeater displaying the news items. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon, choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part and click **OK**. In the web part properties window, set the following properties:

- Web part control ID: NewsRepeater
- Show for document types: don't enter any value
- Path: /News/%
- Document types: CMS.News
- ORDER BY expression: NewsReleaseDate DESC
- WHERE condition:

```
({?tagid|(toint)?} = 0) OR (DocumentID IN ( SELECT DocumentID FROM CMS_DocumentTag WHERE TagID = {?tagid|(toint)?} ))
```

• Transformation: Community. Transformations. NewsPreview

- Selected item transformation: Community.Transformations.NewsDetail
- Enable paging: disabled
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Show new button: enabled
- New button text: Add news

- Show Edit and Delete buttons: enabled
- Content before: <div class="newsRepeater">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

8. Now let's add the **Breadcrumbs** web part. This web part will be displayed only when a news item is displayed, not in the list of news items. When the News item is displayed, the breadcrumbs will make the heading of the page in format *News > Title of the news item*. Click the **Add web part** () icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Navigation -> Breadcrumbs** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at their default values:

- Show for document types: CMS.News
- Breadcrumb separator:
- Encode name: disabled
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Breadcrumbs box
- Content before: <div class="blogsTopBreadcrumbs">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK and drag-and-drop the web part between the NewsTitle and the NewsRepeater web part.

9. Finally, we will add the possibility to sign up for RSS notifications about new news items. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at their default values:

- Web part control ID: RSSImage
- Text:

```
<br /><a href="~/CMSPages/NewsRss.aspx" style="border:0; padding-left: 10px;
padding-right: 10px;"><img src="~/App_Themes/Default/Images/rss.gif" border="0"
alt="RSS" /></a>
```

Click **OK**. The **News** page is now ready. You can try out its functionality by adding some news items under the News page via CMS Desk. The page should display the news items correctly. In **Design** tab, the page should look as in the screenshot below.

/News - page template: My Community Site - News	2
▼ zoneCenter	▼ zoneRight 🛟
editabletext @	 ✓ logonminiform ③
▼ NewsRepeater 🧬	Shortcuts ♂
💌 breadcrumbs 🕜	My profile Edit my profile
▼ RSSImage	<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> <u>My invitations</u>
	Create a new group
	<u>Create a new blog</u> <u>Sign out</u>
	▼ TagCloud 🕜
	▼ ContentSubscription
	Receive the news notification to your e-mail.
	E-mail: admin@mydomainXY.com
	Subscribe

3.10 Creating the Media page

The Media page will display content of the site's global media library created in <u>this chapter</u>. As you will see, the page is very easy to create as all the required functionality will be achieved using the **Media gallery** web part.

Further information can be found in the <u>Module Media libraries</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy	Move Up	J Down	Edit Preview O Live site I List
My Community 9	Site		My Community Site
• ≡ Blogs • ∑ Files • ■ Home			New document
E Logon page			Please select new document type:
·… 📄 Search			F Page (menu item)
			. <mark> 2² Blog</mark> _ <u>></u> Folder
			Link an existing document

2. Enter *Media* into the **Page name** field. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**StarterTemplate** page template and click **Save**.



3. Now we will save the page as a new page template so that the changes made to the page would not be reflected to the **_StarterTemplate**. Select the **Media** page from the content tree, switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details into the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Media
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Media
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: enter some text describing the page template

Click OK.



4. The only web part that we need to add is the **Media gallery** web part. Obviously, it will be placed in the **zoneCenter** web part zone. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Media library -> Media gallery** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Media library: My Community Site Media
- Show subfolders content: enabled
- Use secure links: disabled
- Page size: 8
- Group size: 8
- No record found text: There are no files in the library.

Click OK.

5. The last step is to change the header text. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Media gallery* into the **Editable text** web part's text field. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Home	Media	News
Media g	allery		

6. And that's the **Media** page finished. If you switch to the live site now, you should see the page displaying content of the previously created sample media library.



3.11 Creating the Forums section

3.11.1 Creating the Forums page

198

The forums page will host the site's discussion forums. All the forum content will be displayed by this single page using the **Forum group** web part. In order for the page to display some content, there has to be some forum group defined via the administration interface.

Before you start creating the page, it is therefore recommended to create one forum group. In <u>this</u> <u>chapter</u>, you can see how a sample forum group can be created.

If you needed some more information about the Kentico CMS Forums module, you can find it in Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Forums.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy Move	e 🗘	Jown	Edit OPreview OLive site Ist
🖃 🕥 My Community Site			My Community Site
⊕ · 📄 Blogs ⊕ · 🍃 Files			
📄 Home			New document
📄 Logon page			Please select new document type:
···· 📄 Media ···· 📄 News			
E Search			<u> </u>
_			1 Blog
			E Folder
			Link an existing document

2. In the following dialog, choose to **Create a blank page** using the **Simple** layout. Enter *Forums* into the **Page name** field and click **Save**.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager Site: My
	ove Up	Down	Edit OPreview OLive site List	
🖃 🌍 My Community Site	Э		My Community Site	
 			Spell check	
- 📄 Media				
📄 News 📄 Search			Page name: Forums	
			● Use page template ● Inherit from parent page ④ Blank master page layout Corporate Site home page layout Corporate Site Master Page with Top Menu Grid 2x2 cells Grid 2x2 cells (CSS) Grid 3x2 cells Grid 3x2 cells (CSS) Simple Three columns Three columns (CSS) Top row, three columns, bottom row	Create a blank page

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Edit template properties** link.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administratio	n			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov	_	Down	E	dit	Rreview	Live site	List		
⊡ 🌑 My Community Site 🔄 📄 Blogs			Page	Design	Form Properti	es			
💿 📂 Files			Genera	al	Save				
···· 🗐 Home ···· 🗐 Logon page			URLs Temp	late					
···· 🗐 Media ···· 📄 News			Metad	ata	Template:	Ad-hoc: Foru	ıms		Select
📰 📄 Search			Catego	ories		🛃 Save as	s new template		
			Menu			S. Jaharita			
			Workfl	ow			emplate		
			Version	ıs		Edit tem	nplate properties		
			Relate	d docs					
			Linked	docs	Inherit content				
		4	Securit	τ γ		· · ·	e template settings	5	
						 Do not ini Select ini 	herit any content		
						 Select Inr 	iented levels		

4. In the pop-up window, switch to the Layout tab and replace the layout code with the following code:

Click Save.

🖉 Page Templates Webpage Dialog	×
🖄 Page template properties	2
Templates + Ad-hoc: Forums	
General Layout Web parts Header Documents	
Save Check out to file	^
Check out the layout to file c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite\CMSAdhocTemplateLayouts\7293a1c0-84bc- 4ed3-b55e-65abf605d802.ascx to edit the layout externally.	
O Use shared layout	
Blank master page layout	
O Use custom layout	=
<pre><!-- Container--> <div class="forumSearch"></div></pre>	<u>~</u>
<cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneLeft" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone>	
	~
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite/CMSSiteManager/Development/PageTemplates/PageTemj 🍤 Local intranet	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. You can see only one web part zone on the page, so let's start adding web parts to it. First, we need a heading. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Web part control ID: editabletextHeader
- Editable region title: Header
- Editable region type: Text box
- Content before: <h1 class="header">
- Content after: </h1>

Click OK.

6. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter **Forums** into the **Editable text** web part's text box. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Forums	rums Home					
Header							
Forums							

7. Switch back to the **Design** tab. Because some forums might be accessible only to authenticated users, we will add the Logon miniform web part below the heading. It will be displayed only to unauthenticated anonymous site visitors. Click the **Add web part** (-) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> Logon miniform** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Display to roles: _notauthenticated_
- Logon failure text: Error logging in.
- Username text: username
- Content before: <div class="ForumLogonBox">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

8. Below the logon mini form, the **Forum search box** web part will reside. It will enable users to search in the forum contents. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Forums -> Forum search box** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them as they are:

- Advanced search path: /Forums/Forum-search
- Context search: enabled
- Content before:

```
<div class="ForumSearchBox">

<b>Search forums:&nbsp;</b>
```

• Content after:

</div><div class="clear"></div>

Click OK.

9. Below the Forum search box, we will place the **Forum group** web part. In order for it to display any content, you should have created some sample forum group as mentioned in the beginning of this chapter. Click the **Add web part** (-) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Forums -> Forum group** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values:

- Group name: choose your previously created forum group
- Enable favorites: enabled
- Thread view mode: Flat oldest to newest

- Allow private messaging: enabled
- Allow friendship request: enabled
- Access denied page URL: ~/Special-pages/Access-denied.aspx
- Use friendly URLs: enabled
- Friendly Base URL: ~/Forums
- Content after: <div style="height: 15px;"></div>

Click OK.

10. Below the **Forum group**, we will place the **Forum search results**. The web part will be displaying results of forum search performed by the **Forum search box** web part above. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Forums -> Forum search results** web part. You can leave all properties of the web part at the default values.

11. The last web part on the page is the **On-line users** web part. We will set it up so that it displays the number of users who are currently browsing the forums section. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> On-line users** web part. Set the following properties of the web part:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersOnline
- Path: /Forums
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Content before:

Click OK.

12. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

 /Forums 	- page template: ad-hoc			2					
▼ zoneLe	ft			4					
▼ editab	letextHeader 🔗								
▼ logonn	logonminiform 3								
- Forum	Search 3 Advanced search								
- Forum	Group 🕜	Threads	Posts	Last post					
	Ile Forum Group he sample forum group								
P	Sample Forum 2 this is the second sample forum Lock	0	0	(1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM)					
P	Sample Forum 1 this is the first sample forum Lock	0	0	(1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM)					
	SearchResults								

13. Finally, we will save the page as a new page template so that it can be reused in the future (we will use it when creating the **Forum search** page). Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. In the pop-up dialog, enter the following details:

• Template display name: My Community Site - Forums

- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Forums
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administrati	on		Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov	_	Down	Z Edit	C Preview	Live site List		
My Community Site Blogs Files Forums Home Cogon page Media Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	as new - age tem My Comm My Comm This is	- Webpag plate nunity Site munity Site s the Fo ity Site	te - Forums : Forums te templates orums page of	Form Propert	Ad-hoc: Forums Save as new template Inherit template Edit template properties Use page template settings Do not inherit any content Select inherited levels	5	Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunity	/Site/CMSDe	esk 🧐 Local intranet	.;			

3.11.2 Creating the Forum search page

The **Forum search** page is accessible from the **Forums** page, after clicking the **Advanced search** link of the **Forum search box** web part. The page contains the **Forum search - advanced dialog** web part which enables searching the forums with extended search criteria.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the **Forums** page from the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page** (menu item) document type.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy	Move Up	Jown	Edit Preview O Live site E List
🖃 🌍 My Community S	ite		Forums
🕕 📄 Blogs			
🕕 📂 Files			New document
📄 Forums			
📄 Home			
🔤 📄 Logon page			Please select new document type:
- 📄 Media			<u> Page (menu item)</u>
📄 News			TE rade (menu (cent)
🔤 Search			. Article
			. 📝 Blog

2. We will use the page template created in the <u>previous chapter</u> as the starting point. Choose the **My Community Site templates -> My Community Site - Forums** page template. Enter *Forum search* into the **Page name** field and click **Save**.

CMS Desk My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Community Site 🔊
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview O Live site List		
My Community Site A	Forums Forums Save Save<		
€ Search	 Use page template Inherit from parent page Categories Articles Blogs E-commerce E-vents FAQs Forums General 	no image	no image

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. In the pop-up dialog, enter the following details:

- Template display name: My Community Site Forum search
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.ForumSearch
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administrati	on			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov		J Down	🔁 Edit	C Preview	Live site	Eist		
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Files Forums Home Media Page template - Save Save as new page Template display name: Template code name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	as new	• Webpag plate nunity Site nunity Site munity Site the Fo nunity S	e - Forum search ForumSearch te templates orum search pa	Form Propert	My Commun Save as Inherit to Clone a Edit tem	<u>s ad-hoc template</u> I <u>plate properties</u> template settings herit any content		Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	yCommunity	Site/CMSDe	esk 🧐 Local intranet					

4. Switch to the **Design** tab. Firstly, delete all web parts so that only the **editabletextHeader** and **ForumSearchResults** web parts remain.

•	/ /Forums/Forum search - page template: My Community Site - Forum search		1
	▼ zoneLeft	4	
	💌 editabletextHeader 🔗		
	▼ ForumSearchResults ③		

5. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the **zoneLeft** web part zone and choose the **Forums -> Forum search - advanced dialog** web part. You can leave all properties of the web part at the default values. Drag and drop the web part between the other two web parts on the page.

6. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Forums advanced search* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.

7. The page is finished. If you view it in **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Forums/Forum search - page template: My Community Site - Forum search 🛛 📝						
 zoneLeft 		4				
💌 editabletextHe	ader 🕜		-			
 ExtendedForu 	mSearchDialog 🔗	0				
Written by:						
Search in forums:						
	~					
Search within:	Subject and text 🗸					
Sort results by:	Post time 🗸					
Search						
 ForumSearchR 	esults 🎯					
	esults 🎯					

3.12 Creating the Groups section

3.12.1 Creating the Groups page

The Groups page is the title page of the Groups section. Users will see two **Groups viewer** web parts. The first one of them will be displaying the groups where the user is a members. The second one will be displaying all groups sorted from the newest to the oldest, paged by 9 groups.

If you right-click a group in one of the Groups viewers, you will be offered some actions by a context menu. This functionality is provided in the transformation and <u>here</u>, you can find a description of how exactly it is achieved.

In case you needed detailed information about Kentico CMS Groups module, please refer to the <u>Module Groups</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. Select the root of the content tree and click New. Choose the Page (menu item) document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->**_**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Groups* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Groups
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Groups
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools /	Administration				Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov	_	J Down	<mark>7</mark> Edi	it 🖸	Preview	Live site	Eist		
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Files Groups Home Search Page template - Save Save as new p Template display name: Template category: Template description:	as new - age tem My Comr My Comr My Comr	• Webpag plate nunity Site nunity Site s the Ga ty Site	e - Group .Groups te templat coups pa	a a bs tes age of My	Template:	_StarterTem Save a: Clone a Clone a Clone a Edit ten O Use page Do not in	plate s new template template as ad-hoc template as ad-hoc template nplate properties template settings herit any content herited levels		Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	yCommunity	/Site/CMSDe	esk 🧐 Loc	al intranet	.::				

4. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add another **Editable text** web part to **zoneCenter**. This web part will be displaying a text informing users that they can get context menus with available group-related actions by right clicking a group. Click the **Add web part** ($\stackrel{\frown}{\longrightarrow}$) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values.

5. Switch to the **Page** tab. Enter *Groups* into the first Editable text web part's text field. Into the second one, enter: *Right click the group to get available actions.* Click **Save**.

Blogs	Groups	Home	Forums	Media	News	Members	
Groups							
Right did	k the group to g	jet available ad	tions.				<u></u>
							~

6. Switch back to the **Design** tab. We will add the first **Groups viewer** for displaying the current user's groups. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Groups viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: YourGroups
- Display to roles: _authenticated_
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.GroupsList
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: GroupDisplayName
- WHERE condition: GroupID IN (Select MemberGroupID FROM Community_GroupMember WHERE MemberUserID = {%currentuser.userid%} AND MemberStatus = 0)
- Selected columns: GroupCreatedWhen,GroupID,GroupName,GroupDisplayName, GroupDescription,GroupAvatarID, AvatarGuid
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: You are not currently in any group.
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box Light
- Web part container title: Your groups
- Content after: <div class="clear"> </div>

Click OK.

7. The second **Groups viewer** will be displaying all groups ordered from the newest to the oldest, paged by 9 groups. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Groups viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: RecentlyAddedGroups
- Display to roles: _authenticated_
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.GroupsList
- ORDER BY condition: GroupCreatedWhen DESC
- Selected columns: GroupCreatedWhen,GroupID,GroupName,GroupDisplayName, GroupDescription,GroupAvatarID,AvatarGuid
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are no recently added groups at this moment.
- Page size: 9

- Paging mode: PostBack
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Recently added groups
- Content after: <div class="clear"> </div>

8. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

-	/Groups - page template: My Community Site - Groups	
	▼ zoneCenter	 zoneRight ↓ <li< th=""></li<>
	 editabletext1 get available actions. YourGroups get 	Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile
	Your groups	My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group
	Recently Added Groups	<u>Create a new blog</u> <u>Sign out</u>
	Sort by: Group name Created Search	
	There are no recently added groups at this moment.	

3.12.2 Creating the Create page

On this page, users will be provided with the possibility to create new groups. This is achieved using the **Group registration** web part. There will also be the **Groups viewer** web part in **zoneRight**, which will be displaying the latest 5 groups. The page is accessible from the **Shortcuts** menu, by clicking the **Create a new group** link.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Cont	ent My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy Move	Up Down	Edit Preview O Live site List
🖃 🌖 My Community Site		Groups
吏 📄 Blogs		
🗉 📁 Files		New document
😳 📄 Groups		
📄 Home		
🔤 Logon page		Please select new document type:
🔤 Search		📄 Page (menu item)
🗉 📄 Forums		F Page (menu item)

2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Groups* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Community Site 💙			
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview SLive site List					
□· 🌒 My Community Site ⊕· 📄 Blogs	Groups					
Files Groups Home	Save Save and create another Spell check					
Image: Search Page name: Create						
Media News	O Use page template ○ Inherit from parent page ○) Create a blank page				
	Categories					
	······································	no image	no image			
	FAQs					
		mbersManagement	_StarterTemplate			
	Master templates Membership and security My Community Site templates	no image	no image			

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Groups create
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.GroupsCreate
- **Template category**: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administrati	on			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov		J Down	Edit	C Preview	Live site	Eist		
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Files Groups Create Home			Page Design General URLs Template	es				
Page template - Save			Metadata ge Dialog	Template:	_StarterTemp	new template		Select
Template display name: My Community Site - Groups create Template code name: MyCommunitySite.GroupsCreate Template category: My Community Site templates				Clone as ad-hoc template				
This is the group creation page of My Community Site. Template description:			page	~	template settings nerit any content erited levels			
	Oł		Cancel					
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite/CMSDesk 😏 Local intranet 🛒								

4. Switch to the **Design** tab. Firstly, delete the **Logon mini form** in **zoneRight**. We will not need it on this page as the page is accessible only to authenticated users (the Shortcuts menu doesn't display the link to unauthenticated users).

5. Now that the Logon mini form is deleted, we will add the **Groups viewer** below the **Shortcuts** menu. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Community** -> **Groups viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, the rest of them can be left at the default values:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.GroupsPreviewList
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: GroupCreatedWhen DESC
- Select Top N groups: 5
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no groups.

- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box
- Web part container title: Recent groups

Click OK.

6. Let's move on to **zoneCenter**. First, we will add another **Editable text** web part for displaying additional info text. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values.

7. Below the second Editable text web part, we will add the main web part of this page - the **Group** registration web part. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group registration** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Template source alias path: /Groups/Template
- Template target alias path: /Group-pages
- Text after successful registration: Group has been succesfully registered. Click here to view group profile

Click OK.

8. Switch to the **Page** tab. Enter *Create new group* into the first Editable text web part's text field. Into the second Editable text web part's HTML area, enter the following text:

By entering the details into the form below, you can create your new user group. Make sure you give the group a name and description according to the group's field of interest. It is a good way of attracting site users with the same interest to join your group.

Click Save.

Blogs	Groups	Home	Forums	Media	News	Members	
Create new group							
							;
						Nake sure you give the group a name and description ith the same interest to join your group.	_
according	g to the group's	neid of interes		ay of act actin	ig site users w	iar are same interest to join your group.	
8							
							~

9. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Groups/Create - page template: My Community Site - Groups create					
▼ zoneCenter	4	💌 zoneRight			
editabletext	v editabletext ♂ group				
editabletext1	Into the form below, you can create your new user group. Make sure you give the group a name and description according to the It is a good way of attracting site users with the same interest to join your group.	My profile Edit my profile			
▼ GroupRegistrati	ion @	<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> <u>My invitations</u>			
		Create a new group Create a new blog			
Description:		Sign out			
	×	GroupsViewer GroupsViewer There are currently no groups.			
	O Any site member can join	mere are currently no groups.			
Approve members:	Only approved members can join				
	\bigcirc Only approved members can join except for invited members				
	O Anybody can view the content				
Content access:	◯ Site members can view the content				
	\bigcirc Only group members can view the content				
	ОК				

3.12.3 Creating the Management page

On the Management page, group administrators will be able to manage the profile and settings of their groups. This functionality is provided by the **Group profile** web part. The page is accessible by clicking the **Manage the group** link in the **Shortcuts** menu. This link is displayed only to group administrators when viewing the group's profile.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content My	Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy Mov	_	b wn	Edit OPreview OLive site EList
🖃 🌖 My Community Site			Groups
🕀 📄 Blogs			
🗉 📁 Files			New document
🖃 📄 Groups			
📄 Create			
···· 📄 Home			Please select new document type:
🔤 Logon page			
📄 Search			E <u>Page (menu item)</u>
2. Choose to **Create a blank page** using the **Simple** layout. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Management* and click **Save**.



- Template display name: My Community Site Groups management
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.GroupsManagement
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	ontent My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site	<u>Manager</u> Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Move	Up Down	Edit Preview Live	e site 📃 List	
My Community Site Blogs Files Create Management Page template - Save as Save as new page Template display name: My Template code name: My Template category: My	new Webpag e template y Community Sit yCommunitySite y Community Sit	e - Groups management Groups Management e templates oups management munity Site.	c: Management Save as new template Inherit template Edit template properties se page template settings o not inherit any content elect inherited levels	Select
http://localhost/KenticoCM5_MyCo	mmunitySite/CMSDe	sk 🕞 Local intranet 🛛 🙀		

4. On the same tab, click the **Edit template properties** link. In the pop-up window, switch to the Layout tab and replace the original layout with the following code:

Click Save.

Page Templates Webpage Dialog	\mathbf{X}
Page template properties	2
Templates + My Community Site - Groups management	
General Sites Layout Web parts Header Documents	
Save Check out to file	^
Check out the layout to file c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite\CMSTemplateLayouts\MyCommunitySite\GroupsMa to edit the layout externally.	n
O Use shared layout	
Blank master page layout	=
 Use custom layout 	
<pre><div class="subcontentDiv"> <div class="forumSearch"></div></div></pre>	
<cc1:cmswebpartzone id="zoneCenter" runat="server"></cc1:cmswebpartzone>	
<div class="clear">inbsp;</div>	
	2
http://localhost/KenticoCM5_MyCommunitySite/CMSSiteManager/Development/PageTemplates/PageTem 😏 Local intranet	:

5. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab and enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*}/*Management* into the **Document URL path** field.

CMS Desk Content My De	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager Site:
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview SLive site	
🖃 🌑 My Community Site	Page Design Form Properties	
🗈 🔁 Files	General	
🖃 📄 Groups		
···· 📄 Create		
····· 📄 Management	Template Path	
🗉 📄 Home		
🔤 Logon page		
	Categories Document URL path: /Groups/{GroupName}	/Management
🗄 📄 Forums	Manu Use custom URL pa	ath
Media	Menu	

6. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add the **Group security access** web part. This web part checks if the user has the appropriate permissions for this group and redirects her to the **Access** page, which we will create later in <u>this chapter</u>, in case that the permissions are insufficient. Click the **Add web part** () icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group security access** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values. Click **OK**.

7. Below the Group security access, we will add the **Static text** web part, which will show the path to the currently managed group in a form of breadcrumbs. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Web part control ID: Breadcrumbs
- Text:

```
<div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <a href="~/Groups/{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%}</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSCurrentItem"> {%CMSContext.CurrentDocument.DocumentName|
(encode)true%} </span>
</div>
```

Click OK.

8. Finally, we will add the **Group profile** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group profile** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

• Group name: (current group)

Click OK.

9. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.



3.12.4 Creating the Access page

Many of the pages in the Groups section contain the **Group security access** web part. This web part checks if the user is permitted to see the content of the page. When a user tries to access such a page with insufficient permissions, she is redirected to the Access page. Here, a message is displayed telling that access is not permitted. This message is displayed by the **Group security message** web part.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager
New Delete Copy	Move Up	J Down	Edit Preview SLive site List	
🖃 🌖 My Community S	Site		Groups	
🗉 📄 Blogs		-		
🗉 📁 Files			New document	
🖃 📄 Groups			I New document	
📄 📄 Create				
🔤 Managem	ent		Please select new document type:	
📄 Home				
E Logon page			📄 <u>Page (menu item)</u>	
Search			Base	
E Search			Article	

2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Access* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My De	sk Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Community Site 🕚
New Delete Copy Move Up Dow	Edit Preview Dive site		
Wy Community Site Blogs Files	Groups		
Groups F Create Management			
E Home Logon page Search	Page name: Access		
 Forums Media News 	Use page template Inherit from parent page		
	Blogs E-commerce	no image	no image
		mbersManagement	_StarterTemplate
	Home pages Gamma Depages Gamma Depages Gamma Depages Gamma Depages Gamma Depage Depage		
	Moneuge base	no image	no image

- Template display name: My Community Site Access
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Access
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administratio	n			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Move	_	J Down	2	Edit	Rreview	Live site	Eist		
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Files Groups Create Management Page template - Save	as new -	- Webna	Page Gener URLs Temp Metad	al plate	Form Propert	_StarterTemp			Select
Save as new p			3- 1140	у <u>с</u>		V Inherit te		J	
Template display name: Template code name: Template category:	MyComr	munity Si nunitySite imunity Si	Acces	S	~	_	s ad-hoc templa		
Template description:		s the A ity Sit		page of 1	4γ	-	template setting nerit any content erited levels		
	0	K (Ca	ncel					
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunit	ySite/CMSD	esk 🧐	Local intranet	.:				

4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*}/*Access* into the **Document URL path** field and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration Switch to Site Manager Site
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview SLive site
My Community Site P Blogs D S	Page Design Form Properties
💽 🎾 Files 🖃 📄 Groups	General Save
E Access	URLs
E Create	Template Path
Management	Metadata Document alias: Access
E Logon page	Categories Document URL path: //Groups/{GroupName}/Access
···· 📄 Search	Menu Use custom URL path
	Workflow C Extended properties
F News	Versions URL extensions:
	Related docs Track campaign:

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, remove the **Editable text** web part from **zoneCenter**. We will add the **Static text** web part instead of it. The Static text web part will be set up so that it displays the path to the page in a form of breadcrumbs. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Web part control ID: Breadcrumbs
- Text:

```
<div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <a href="~/Groups/{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%}</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator"> </span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSCurrentItem"> Access denied </span>
</div>
```

Click OK.

6. The main part of this page is the **Group security message** web part. The web part will display the warning message about insufficient permissions. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, leave all of them at the default values.

7. The page is finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Groups/Access - page template: My Community Site - Access	2
✓ zoneCenter ✓ statictext @ss denied	 ▼ zoneRight ↓ logonminiform ③
▼ GroupSecurityMessage ③	Shortcuts @
	<u>My profile</u> Edit my profile
	My messages My friends My invitations
	Create a new group Create a new blog
	Sign out

3.12.5 Creating groups starter template

In this example, we will create another starter template. In the Groups section, there will be pages displaying content of particular groups - group's profile, pages (articles), media libraries, group members and group forums. All of the pages will contain the same three web parts, so we will create a starter template with these web parts to facilitate development of these pages.

The page template will be based on the _StarterTemplate page template created in this chapter.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview Dive site List
🖃 🌖 My Community Site	Groups
ere ≓ Blogs ere ≽ Files ere ≓ Groups	New document
Create	Please select new document type:
····· 📄 Management ····· 📄 Home	📄 <u>Page (menu item)</u>
E Logon page	Article

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->**_**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter _*GroupsTemplate* and click **Save**.



- Template display name: _GroupsTemplate
- Template code name: _GroupsTemplate
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administra	tion		Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov		Down	Z Edit	Preview	🗿 Live site 📃 List		
My Community Site Blogs Files Groups Compstemp Access	late		Page Design General URLs Template	Form Propert	ies		
Create			Metadata	Template:	_StarterTemplate		Select
Page template - Save Save as new p	age tem	plate	e Dialog	×	Save as new template Save as new template Clone as ad-hoc templa	te	
Template display name:	_GroupsT	-			Edit template properties		
Template code name:	_GroupsT				-		
Template category: Template description:	This is	s the te	te templates emplate for so Groups section Cancel		 Use page template setting Do not inherit any content Select inherited levels 	15	
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunity	Site/CMSDe	esk 🧐 Local intranet	.::			

4. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add the **Group links** menu into **zoneRight** web part zone. The menu will contain links interconnecting particular pages of the currently displayed group like its forums, media, etc. The menu will be created using the **Static text** web part. Click the **Add web part** (
icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Web part control ID: Links
- Text:

```
<a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx">Home</
a><br />
<a href="~/Group-pages/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Pages.
aspx">Pages</a><br />
<a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Media-list.
aspx">Media</a><br />
<a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Members.
aspx">Media</a><br />
<a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Members.
aspx">Members</a><br />
<a href="~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Forums.
aspx">Forums</a><br />
```

- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box
- Web part container title: Group links

Click OK.

5. In **zoneCenter**, you first need to **remove** the **Editable text** web part that is already in the template. Now that **zoneCenter** is clear, we can add **Group security access** web part to the top of the web part zone. Click the **Add web part** (-) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community** -> **Group security access** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part. Just use the default values and click **OK**. 6. The page is now finished. In Design tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.



7. Finally, delete the **_GroupsTemplate** page from the content tree. The page template will remain saved and available.



3.12.6 Creating the Profile page

The Profile page displays a profile of a group besed on the {*GroupName*} wildcard part of the URL, which gets translated into a query string parameter and is then taken as the current group. More information about wildcard URLs can be found in <u>this chapter</u> of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

The profile is displayed using the **Group public profile** based on the *Community.Group. DisplayProfile* alternative form. You can learn how to modify the alternative form <u>here</u>.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy Move	Up Down	Edit Preview Dive site List
🖃 🌖 My Community Site		Groups
🕀 📄 Blogs		
🗄 📂 📂 Files		New document
🖃 📄 Groups		
- F Access		
···· 📄 Create		Please select new document type:
🔤 Management		🗐 <u>Page (menu item)</u>
🖳 📄 Home		
		Article

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Profile* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Ontent My Des	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Community Site 🔽
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview Dive site List		
My Community Site Blogs Files Forcease Create Management Flome Cogon page Forcums Forcums Media FNews	Home pages 1 Images 1 Job openings 1 Knowledge base	no image	no image fembersManagement
	Image: second security Image: second security Image: second security Image: second sec	no image	no image

- Template display name: My Community Site Groups profile
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.GroupsProfile
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administratio	n		Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Move	e Op	Down	2	Edit	Preview	Live site 📃 List		
My Community Site Blogs Files Groups My Community Site Blogs Files Create My Community Site Blogs Files Create		-	Page Gener URLs Tem	al	Form Properti	25		
Management			Metad	lata	Template:	_GroupsTemplate		Select
Page template - Save Save as new p		1	ge Dial	og	×	Save as new template		
Template display name:	My Com	munity Si	te - Gro	oups profile		Clone as ad-hoc templat	<u>e</u>	
Template code name:	MyCom	munitySite	e.Group	sProfile		Edit template properties		
Template category:	My Con	nmunity S	ite tem	plates	~			
Template description:	This is the Groups profile page of My Community Site.				page	 Use page template setting Do not inherit any content Select inherited levels 	5	
http://localhost/KenticoCM5_M	0			ancel				

4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*} into the **Document URL path** field and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Des	Tools Administration Switch to Site Manager	Site:
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview Site List	
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Files Groups Create Management	Page Design Form Properties General Image: Save Image: Save URLs Image: Save Template Path Metadata Document alias: Profile	
E Profile Home E Logon page	Categories Document URL path: //Groups/{GroupName} Menu Image: Wight of the second secon	
E Search Forums E Media	Workflow Extended properties Versions URL extensions: Related docs Track campaign:	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. We will start with **zoneRight** web part zone. Below the **Group links** info box, we will add two more info boxes. The first one of them will be displaying the current group's administrators. Click the **Add web part** () icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group members viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Web part control ID: GroupMembersAdministrators
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersPreviewList
- Alternating item transformation name: erase the default value
- Separator transformation name: erase the default value
- Header transformation name: erase the default value
- Footer transformation name: erase the default value
- No record found text: There are currently no administrators.
- Show filter: disabled
- WHERE condition: MemberUserID IN (SELECT UserID FROM CMS_UserRole WHERE RoleID IN (SELECT RoleID FROM CMS_Role WHERE RoleGroupID = '{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup. GroupID%}' AND RoleIsGroupAdministrator = 1))
- Selected columns: UserID,UserNickName,UserGender,UserDateOfBirth,UserAvatarID, UserCreated,UserName, AvatarGuid
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box
- Web part container title: Group administrators

Click OK.

6. Below the group administrators, we will add the same **Group members viewer** web part, but this one will be displaying the latest 5 approved members of the group. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group members viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersPreviewList
- Alternating item transformation name: erase the default value

- Separator transformation name: erase the default value
- Header transformation name: erase the default value
- Footer transformation name: erase the default value
- No record found text: There are currently no members.
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: MemberApprovedWhen DESC
- Select Top N members: 5
- Selected columns: UserID,UserNickName,UserGender,UserDateOfBirth,UserAvatarID, UserCreated,UserName, AvatarGUID
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box
- Web part container title: Group administrators

Click OK.

7. The **zoneRight** web part zone is finshed, so let's move to **zoneCenter**. To the top of the web part zone, we will add a breadcrumbs heading using the **Breadcrumbs** web part. Click the **Add web part** () icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Navigation -> Breadcrumbs** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Breadcrumb separator:
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Content before: <div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

8. Below the breadcrumbs, we want the group's public profile to be displayed. This can be achieved using the **Group public profile** web part, which displays the group's public profile based on the specified alternative form. By default, the *Community.Group.DisplayProfile* alternative form is used. Click the **Add web part** (-) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group public profile** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part. Just use the default values and click **OK**.

9. Below the Group public profile, we will add a message board where group administrators will be able to leave announcements. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group message board** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Message transformation: Community.Transformations.MessageBoardComments
- No messages text: There are no announcements at this time
- Display name: Group {%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%} board
- Access: Only group admin
- Enable subscriptions: enabled
- **Board base URL**: ~/Groups/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Group announcements

Click OK.

10. Now we will add a **Group forum posts viewer**. This web part will be set so that it will display the 5 latest posts in the group's forums. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group forum posts viewer** web part. Set the following properties of

the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.ForumGroupPostsList
- Top N: 5
- Order by: PostTime DESC
- Selected columns: PostIDPath,PostForumID,PostText,PostTime,PostSubject
- Hide if no record found: disalbed
- No record found text: There are currently no posts.
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Latest in forums

Click OK.

11. The last web part on the page will be a **Repeater** displaying articles in the Group pages section. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Web part control ID: MostRecentPages
- Path: /Group-pages/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Pages/%
- Document types: CMS.SimpleArticle
- ORDER BY expression: DocumentCreatedWhen DESC
- Transformation: CMS.SimpleArticle.SimplePreview
- Selected item transformation: CMS.SimpleArticle.Default
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no pages.
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Most recent pages
- Content before: <div class="GeneralList">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

12. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Groups/Profile - page template: My Community Site - Groups profile	
✓ zoneCenter	▼ zoneRight
breadcrumbs ③	 ✓ logonminiform ② ✓ Shortcuts ③
GroupPublicProfile 3	My profile
▼ GroupMessageBoard ③	Edit my profile My messages
GroupForumPostsViewer Generation	<u>My friends</u> <u>My invitations</u> Create a new group
There are currently no posts.	<u>Create a new blog</u> Sign out
MostRecentPages Most recent pages	▼ Links //9
There are currently no pages.	Links Cks
	Pages Media Members
	Forums
	GroupMembersAdministrators GroupMembersViewer

3.12.7 Creating the Members page

On the Members page, users of the current group will be displayed. This will be achieved using the **Group members viewer** web part.

If you right-click a user, you will be offered some actions by a context menu. This functionality is provided in the transformation and <u>here</u>, you can find a description of how exactly it is achieved.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy Move Up	J Down	Edit Preview Site List
🖃 🌖 My Community Site		Groups
🖃 🔁 Files		New document
Groups		
		Please select new document type:
Management		Page (menu item)
📄 Home		Article

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Members* and click **Save**.



- Template display name: My Community Site Group members
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.GroupsMembers
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Mana	ger Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview ILiv	e site 📃 List	
My Community Site Blogs Files Groups Access	Page Design Form Properties General URLs		
······································	Template Metadata Template: _Gro	upsTemplate	Select
Page template - Save as new Webpa Save as new page template	ge Dialog 🛛 🔀	Save as new template	
Template display name: My Community S	te - Group members	Clone as ad-hoc template	
Template code name: MyCommunitySite	e.GroupMembers	Edit template properties	
Template category: My Community S	ite templates 💌		
This is the G My Community Template description:	Site.	ise page template settings to not inherit any content	
ОК	Cancel	elect inherited levels	
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite/CMSE	esk 🧐 Local intranet 🔤 🍂		

4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*}/*Members* into the **Document URL path** field and click **Save**.

CMS Desk	ontent My Desk	Tools A	dministration			Switch to Site Manager	Site:
New Delete Copy Move	Up Down	Z Edit		Preview 🧿 Live	site 📃 List		
🖃 🌑 My Community Site 💼 📄 Blogs		Page	Design Forr	n Properties			
🖃 📂 Files 🖃 📄 Groups		General		Save			
Access		URLs	_				
📄 Create		Template		Path			
Management		Metadata			Members		
Members		Categorie	s	Document URL path:	/Groups/{GroupName}/I	Members	_
···· 📄 Home		Menu			Use custom URL pat	n	
E Logon page		Workflow					
E Search				 Extended properties 			
🖅 📑 Forums		Versions		URL extensions:			
🖳 📄 Media		Related de	DCS	Track campaign:			
🔤 News							

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. We can leave **zoneRight** as it is and go straight to **zoneCenter**. First, we will add a breadcrumbs heading using the **Static text** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: Breadcrumbs
- Text:

```
<div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <a href="~/Groups/{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%}</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMS
```

Click OK.

6. Below the heading, it will be useful to add some info text. We will use the **Editable text** web part for this purpose. Click the **Add web part** () icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text** -> **Editable text** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values.

Click OK.

```
7. Switch to the Page tab and enter the following text into the Editable text web part's text area.
```

```
Bellow you can find list of group members. Right click the user to get available actions.
```

Click Save.

8. Switch back to **Design** tab. Now we will add the **Group members viewer** web part, which displays members of the current group. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group members viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them.

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersList
- Alternating item transformation name: erase the default value
- Separator transformation name: erase the default value
- Header transformation name: erase the default value
- Footer transformation name: erase the default value
- Selected columns: UserID, UserNickName, UserGender, UserDateOfBirth, UserAvatarID, UserActivityPoints, UserName, AvatarGuid
- Page size: 9
- Paging mode: PostBack
- Group size: 9
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: All members

Click OK.

9. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.



3.12.8 Creating the Media list page

Groups can have any number of media libraries. Because of this fact, we will create the Media list page. On this page, a list of all media libraries of the current group will be displayed by the **Group media libraries viewer** web part. After clicking a media library, users will be redirected to the **Media** page, created in <u>this chapter</u>, where the content of the library will be displayed.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy	Move Up	Jown	Edit Preview O Live site List
🗉 🌍 My Community Si	ite		Groups
🖃 📄 Blogs			
🗉 📁 Files			New document
🖃 📄 Groups			
🔤 Access			
📄 📄 Create			Please select new document type:
📄 Manageme	ent		Page (menu item)
Members			E Page (menu item)
📄 Profile			Article

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Media list* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager Site: My Community Site
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview Dive site List	
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Groups	o Create a blank page no image GroupsTemplate
		no image no image

- Template display name: My Community Site Media list
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.MediaList
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administratio	'n			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co		
New Delete Copy Move	_	Down	Z E	Edit	C Preview	Live site	Eist				
My Community Site				Page Design Form Properties General Save							
Create			emplate								
Page template - Save			Metad e Dialo		Template:	- Str	nplate s new template remplate		Select		
Template display name: Template code name: Template category:	Template code name: MyCommunitySite.MediaList						Clone as ad-hoc template Edit template properties				
This is the Media list page of My Community Site.						 Use page template settings Do not inherit any content Select inherited levels 					
	Oł		Car	ncel	V						
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	yCommunity	/Site/CMSDe	esk 🧐 L	.ocal intranet							

4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*}/*Media-list* into the **Document URL path** field and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content M	ly Desk	Tools Administration		Switch to Site Manager	Site:
	J own	Z Edit	Preview 🧿 Live s	ite 📃 List	
🖃 🕘 My Community Site 吏 📄 Blogs	-	Page Design F	orm Properties		
🕀 🍃 Files		General	Save		
Groups		URLs			
···· 🗾 Create		Template	- Path		
···· 📄 Management ····· 📄 Media list		Metadata		Media-list	
Members		Categories	Document URL path: /	Groups/{GroupName}/Media-list	_
Profile		Menu	[Use custom URL path	
		Workflow	E to de la constitue		
E Logon page		Versions	URL extensions:		_
			Track campaign:		
🗆 📄 Media		Related docs			

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add a breadcrumbs heading using the **Static text** web part. Click the **Add web part** () icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: Breadcrumbs
- Text:

```
<div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <a href="~/Groups/{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%}</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSCurrentItem">></span></span></span</span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span></span>
```

6. Now we will add some info text using the Editable text web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values.

Click OK.

7. Switch to the Page tab and enter the following text into the Editable text web part's text area.

Bellow you can find list of group media libraries.

Click Save.

8. Switch back to **Design** tab. We will add the **Group media libraries viewer** web part. Click the **Add** web part (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group media libraries viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the

rest of them.

- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no media libraries.
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled

Click OK.

9. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.



3.12.9 Creating the Media page

When a user clicks a media library in a list on the Media list page, created in the <u>previous chapter</u>, she is redirected to this page where the **Media gallery** web part displays the content of the selected library. The name of the library is passed in the {*GroupName*}/{*LibraryName*} wildcard part of the URL of this page. Then it gets translated into a query string parameter and displayed by the Media gallery web part as the current group.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Conte	mt My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy Move U	p Down	Edit Preview SLive site List
🖃 🌍 My Community Site		Groups
🖃 📄 Blogs		
🕕 📁 Files		New document
🖃 📄 Groups		
Access		
📄 Create		Please select new document type:
📄 Management		
📄 Media list		🖹 <u>Page (menu item)</u>
		Article

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Media list* and click **Save**.



- Template display name: My Community Site Group media
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.GroupMedia
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administration	n			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co	
New Delete Copy Move	_	Down	E	dit	Preview	Live site	List			
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Files Groups			Page General URLs		Form Propert	es				
Create										
Page template - Save			Metada e Dialog		Template:	_GroupsTempla			Select	
Template display name:		munity Sit	e - Grou	p media		Inherit temp Clone as a	<u>plate</u> d-hoc template			
Template code name:		nunitySite				Edit template properties				
Template category: My Community Site templates This is the group Media page of My Community Site.					 Use page ter Do not inherit 					
Template description:					>	 Select inherit 				
	Oł	(Can	cel						
http://localhost/KenticoCM5_M	WC opposite		sek 📢 Le	cal intranet						
http:///ocdinose/kendcoch/b_h	iy communic;	PORCYCHODO		searcher an ec						

4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*}/{*LibraryName*} into the **Document URL path** field and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration Switch to Site Manager Sit
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit OPreview OLive site
My Community Site Site Blogs Files	Page Design Form Properties
Groups	General Save
····F Create ····F Management ····F Media	Template Path Metadata Document alias: Media
····]E Media list ····]E Members	Categories Document URL path: /Groups/{GroupName}/{LibraryName} Menu ✓ Use custom URL path
Forfile Home	Workflow Extended properties
E Logon page E Search F Forums	Versions URL extensions: Related docs Track campaign:

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add a breadcrumbs heading using the **Static text** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: Breadcrumbs
- Text:

```
<div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <a href="~/Groups/{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%}</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">>&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">>&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">>></span> </span> </s
```

Click OK.

6. Below the breadcrumbs, we will add another **Static text** web part. This one will provide a link back to the list of the group's media libraries. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: BackLink
- Text:

```
<a style="margin: 20px 0px 0px 98px;" class="MediaBack" href="~/Groups/{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Media-List.aspx">Back to libraries</a>
```

7. The last web part in zoneCenter will be the Media gallery web part. This web part displays content of

the particular libraries based on the library name passed in query string. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Media library -> Media gallery** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Show subfolders content: enabled
- Hide folder tree: enabled
- Content before: <div style="padding: 10px 0px 0px 100px">
- Content after: <div class="clear"></div></div>

Click OK.

8. The page is now finished. In Design tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Groups/Media - page template: My Community Site - Group media				
zoneCenter GroupSecurityAccess Freadcrumbs BackLink BackLink BackLink BackLink BackLink BackLink Du are not allowed to see media library content. Permission 'libraryaccess' is required.	zoneRight zoneRight Jogonminiform Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new plog Sign out Links Links Home Pages Media Members			

3.12.10 Creating the Forums page

The forums page will provide the group forums functionality using the **Group forum list** web part. It will display the content of the group forums based on the *{GroupName}* wildcard part of the URL.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy M	love Up	Jown	Edit Preview SLive site List
🖃 🎱 My Community Site	e		Groups
 			New document
E Access			Please select new document type:
🔤 Managemer	nt		F <u>Page (menu item)</u>
📄 Media list			Article

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Forums* and click **Save**.



- Template display name: My Community Site Group forums
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.GroupForums
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administratio	n				Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov	_	Down	Z E	dit	C Preview	· [Live site	Eist		
My Community Site Blogs Files Groups Create			Page Genera URLs Temp	al		operti	25			
Forums Template: Metadata Template: Page template - Save as new Webpage Dialog Image: Complete Community Site - Group Forums Image: Community Community Complete Complete Complete Complete Complete Complete Complete Complete Community Site Complete Complete Community Site Complete Complete Community Site Complete Complete Community Site Community Sit							 Inheritt Clone a Editten Use page 	emplate as ad-hoc template as ad-hoc templa pplate properties e template setting herit any content		Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite/CMSDesk 🧐 Local intranet 🛛 🦷										

4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Enter /*Groups*/{*GroupName*}/*Forums* into the **Document URL path** field and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration Switch to Site Manager Si	Site:					
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview O Live site List						
🖃 🌑 My Community Site 👜 📄 Blogs	Page Design Form Properties						
	General Save						
Create	Template Path						
Forums Management	Metadata Document alias: Forums]					
🖳 📄 Media	Categories Document URL path: //Groups/{GroupName}/Forums						
E Media list	Menu Use custom URL path						
Profile	Workflow Extended properties						
··· 🗾 Home	Versions URL extensions:]					
E Logon page E Search	Related docs Track campaign:]					

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. We will leave **zoneRight** web part zone as it is and start modifying **zoneCenter** right off. First, we will add a breadcrumbs heading using the **Static text** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: Breadcrumbs
- Text:

```
<div class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <a href="~/Groups/{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%}</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">>&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">>&nbsp;</span> <span
class="CMSBreadCrumbSeparator">>></span> </span>
```

Click OK.

6. Below the breadcrumbs, we will add the **Forum search box** web part that will enable users to search the forum content. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Forums -> Forum search box** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

Content before:

```
<div class="ForumSearchBox"><b>Search forums:&nbsp;</b>
```

· Content after:

</div><div class="clear"></div>

Click OK.

7. The forum functionality itself is provided by the **Group forum list** web part. This is the only web part that is needed for the whole forums structure, all forum content will be displayed from this page by this web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group forum list** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Groups separator:

- Base URL: ~/{%CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}/Forums.aspx
- Unsubscription URL: ~/Special-Pages/Forum-Unsubscribe.aspx

Click OK.

8. In step 6, we added the **Forum search box** web part to the page. Now we need to add another web part to the page where the search results will be displayed. This can be achieved by the **Group forum search results** web part. Click the **Add web part** () icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group forum search results** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values.

Click OK.

9. The last web part in this web part zone will be the **On-line users** web part. It will be set up so that it displays the number of users currently accessing the group's forum section. Click the **Add web part** (
icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> On-line users** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersOnline
- Path: /Groups/{GroupName}/Forums
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Content before:

Click OK.

10. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Groups/Forums - page template: My Community Site - Group forums	
/Groups/Forums - page template: My Community Site - Group forums zoneCenter GroupSecurityAccess Breadcrumbs ForumSearch Go GroupForumList GroupForumSearchResults OnlineUsers Users on-line.	zoneRight Jogonminiform Sortcuts Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My friends Greate a new group Greate a new blog Sign out Links Siks
	Home Pages Media Members Forums

3.12.11 Preparing the Group pages section

3.12.11.1 Creating the Template page

This page is a special one. It will be used as a template for the group pages section, which is created for each group under a specified page of the content tree, which we will create in <u>this chapter</u>. The group pages section enables members of a group to create and edit articles related to the group and displayed within the group's section.

On this page, there will be a **Repeater** displaying a list of articles of the particular group. This page will also be used as a master page for the **Pages** page, which will be displaying the particular articles placed under it. The Pages page will be created in the <u>following chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Groups** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy	Move Up	J Down	Edit Preview OLive site List
🖃 🌖 My Community S	lite		Groups
🖭 📄 Blogs			
🖅 🗁 Files			New document
🖃 📄 Groups			
- E Access			
🔤 📄 Create			Please select new document type:
🔤 📄 Forums			
📄 Managem	ent		🖹 <u>Page (menu item)</u>
📄 Media			Decision
E Ficula			Article

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Template* and click **Save**.


3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Group pages template
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.GroupPagesTemplate
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manage	r Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview	O Live site 📃 List	
My Community Site Site Blogs Files	Page Design Form Propert	ies	
Groups	General URLs Save		
Forums	Template Metadata Template:	GroupsTemplate	Select
 Page template - Save as new Webpa Save as new page template Template display name: My Community S 	ge Dialog 🛛 🗙	Save as new template	
	e.GroupPagesTemplate	Edit template properties	
	ite templates 💙 roup pages template 🖄 mmunity Site.	 Use page template settings De objective of environmentant 	
Template description:		 Do not inherit any content Select inherited levels 	
ОК	Cancel		
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite/CMSE	esk 🍳 Local intranet		

4. Still on the **Properties** tab, click the **Edit template properties** link. In the pop-up window, scroll down and check the **Show as master template** option. Also change the inheritance so that the page template inherits from **Level 0** and **Level 2**. Click **Save** in the pop-up window to save the changes and close it.

🖉 Page Templates Web	page Dialog	×
Page template pr	roperties	2
Templates 🔸 My Communit	ty Site - Group pages template	
General Sites Layout	Web parts Header Documents	
Category:	My Community Site templates	~
Template description:	This is the Group pages template Apage of My Community Site.	
	×	
Thumbnail:	Upload: Browse	
Template type:	Portal page ASPX page	
Show as master template:		≡
Inherit content:	O Inherit all	
	O Do not inherit any content	
	Select inherited levels	
	····· V Level0	
	Evel2	
	····· Level5	~
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyC	CommunitySite/CMSSiteManager/Development/PageTemplates/PageTemp 😒 Local intranet	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add a breadcrumbs heading using the **Breadcrumbs** web part. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Navigation -** > **Breadcrumbs** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Starting path: /{0}/{1}/
- Breadcrumb separator:
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Content before:

```
<div style="padding-left:10px" class="GroupBreadcrumbs">
<a href="~/Groups.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">Groups</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator">&nbspi</span> <a href="~/Groups/{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupName%}.aspx" class="CMSBreadCrumbsLink">{%
CommunityContext.CurrentGroup.GroupDisplayName|(encode)true%}</a> <span
class="TitleBreadCrumbSeparator">></a>
```

Content after: </div>

Click OK.

6. Now we will add a repeater displaying a list of pages of the current group. Click the Add web part (
icon of the zoneCenter web part zone and choose the Listings and viewers -> Repeater web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: repeaterPages
- Hide on subpages: enabled
- Path: ./Pages/%
- Document types: CMS.SimpleArticle
- **Transformation**: CMS.SimpleArticle.SimplePreview
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no pages.
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Most recent pages
- Content before: <div class="GeneralList">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

7. Finally, we will add the **Page placeholder** in which the page with the particular article will be displayed. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **General -> Page placeholder** web part. Leave all the properties of the web part at the default values and click **OK**.

8. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Groups/Template - page template: My Community Site - Group pages template	
v zoneCenter	▼ zoneRight 🛟
▼ GroupSecurityAccess ③	▼ logonminiform
▼ breadcrumbs 🚱	▼ Shortcuts @
▼ repeaterPages Most recent pages	My profile Edit my profile
There are currently no pages.	<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> My invitations
v pageplaceholder 🔗	Create a new group
	Create a new blog Sign out
	▼ Links ↓ks
	Home Pages Media Members Forums

3.12.11.2 Creating the Pages page

This page also serves as the template for the group pages section. It will be copied along with the <u>Template</u> page to the specified path on each group's creation to form the group's group pages section.

On the page, there will be a **Repeater** for displaying the articles. We will also need the User contributions module web parts providing on-site adding and editing of articles. For more details about the User contributions concept, please refer to the <u>Module User contributions</u> chapter of **Kentico CMS Developer's Guide**.

1. Select the Groups page in the content tree and click New. Choose the Page (menu item)

document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _GroupsTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Pages* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Des	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview Site List	
My Community Site Blogs	Groups > Template	
Files Forups Files Forups Forups Forups	Save and create another Spell check	
Ereate Forums Management	Page name: Pages	
···· 📄 Media ···· 📄 Media list	◯ Use page template ◯ Inherit from parent page ④ C	reate a blank page
E Members Frofile	Blank master page layout Corporate Site home page layout Corporate Site Master Page with Top Menu	
Home Logon page Search	Grid 2x2 cells Grid 2x2 cells (CSS) Grid 3x2 cells	
	Grid 3x2 cells (CSS) Simple Three columns Three columns (CSS)	Simple
🖳 📄 News	Top row three columns bottom row	Simple layout with one web

3. Switch to the **Properties** tab and click the **Edit template properties** link. In the pop-up window, scroll down and select the inheritance so that the page template inherits from **Level 0** and **Level 2**. Click **Save**.

🖉 Page Templates Web	page Dialog	×
Page template pr	operties	0
Templates 🕨 My Communit	y Site - Group pages - Pages	
General Sites Layout	Web parts Header Documents	
Category:	My Community Site templates	
Template description:	This is the Pages page of the Group pages section of My Community Site.	
	×.	
Thumbnail:	Upload: Browse	
Template type:		=
Show as master template:		
Inherit content:	🔿 Inherit all	
	O Do not inherit any content	
	 Select inherited levels 	
	····· V Level0	-
	Level1	
	ⁱ Level3	3.0
http://localbost/KepticoCMS_MvCv	ommunitySite/CMSSiteManager/Development/PageTemplates/PageTemp	

4. Switch to the Layout tab and replace the original layout code with the following code:

Click Save.

🖉 Page Templates Webpage Dialog	×
Page template properties	2
Templates + Ad-hoc: Pages	
General Layout Web parts Header Documents	
Save G Check out to file	*
Check out the layout to file c:\Inetpub\wwwroot\KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite\CMSAdhocTemplateLayouts\a37d91f2-a43e- 4c80-a3ad-9edacf9aabe2.ascx to edit the layout externally.	
O Use shared layout	
Blank master page layout	
O Use custom layout	Ξ
<pre><div class="subcontentDiv"> <div class="contentGroupPages"></div></div></pre>	
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_MyCommunitySite/CMSSiteManager/Development/PageTemplates/PageTemi 🧐 Local intranet	*

5. Back on the **Properties -> Template** tab, click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up window:

- Template display name: My Community Site Group template Pages
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.GroupTemplatePages
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administratio	n		Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov		Down	Edit	C Preview	💽 Live site 📃 List		
	as new age tem My Comr MyComr My Comr This is	Down Webpag plate nunity Site munity Site munity Site s the P	Page Design General URLs Template Metadata	Form Properti Save Template:			Select
Template description:	Commun i OK		Cancel	×.	Select inherited levels		

6. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will need the **Group security access** web part to ensure that only users with appropriate permissions can access the group pages. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneList** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group security access** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave the default values for all of them.

7. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the **zoneList** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group contribution list** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Hide on subpages: enabled
- Path: ./%
- Path for new documents: ./%
- Allowed new document types: CMS.SimpleArticle
- Alternative form name: PublicSimpleArticle
- Display list of documents: disabled

- New item button label: New page
- List button label: Pages
- Select only published: disabled
- Allow editing by users: Authenticated

Click OK.

8. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the **zoneList** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group edit contribution** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Show for document types: CMS.SimpleArticle
- Alternative form name: PublicSimpleArticle
- Allow editing by users: Authenticated
- Content before: <div class="Contributions">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

9. Finally, we will add a **Repeater** for displaying the articles. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneList** web part zone and choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest of them at the default values.

- Web part control ID: ArticleRepeater
- Path: ./%
- Document types: CMS.SimpleArticle
- Transformation: CMS.SimpleArticle.SimplePreview
- Selected item transformation: CMS.SimpleArticle.Default
- Navigation buttons: None
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- · Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: There are currently no pages.
- Content before:
<div class="GeneralList">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

10. The page is finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

Blogs Groups Home Forums Media News Members	Search
Groups	Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new glog
. ▼ ArtideRepeater ĝ	Sign out Group links Home Pages Media Members Forums

3.12.11.3 Creating the Group pages title page

The Group pages page will not be displayed in the site navigation. It will also not contain any content. The only purpose of this page it for the group pages sections of particular groups to be placed under it. It is important to set the alias path of this page in the **Template target alias path** property of the **Group registration** web part, which was added to <u>this page</u>.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content My D	esk Tools Administration
New Delete Copy Mo	Dve Up Dow	n Edit Review Dive site List
🖃 🌍 My Community Site		My Community Site
🖻 📄 Blogs		
🗉 📁 Files		New document
🖃 📄 Groups		
E Access		
🔤 📄 Create		Please select new document type:
🛛 📄 Forums		Page (menu item)
📄 Management	t	E Page (mend icem)
📄 Media		
🛛 📄 Media list		Blog
🛛 📄 Members		Folder
🖳 📄 Profile		
🖃 📄 Template		Link an existing document
Pages		

2. Choose to **Create a blank page** using the **Simple** layout. For **Page name**, enter *Group pages* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager Site: My
New Delete Copy	Move Up	Down	Edit Preview O Live site List	
🖃 🌖 My Community S	Site		My Community Site	
 			Spell check	
E Logon page				
···· 📄 Search			Page name: Group pages	
🖃 📄 Forums				
News			🔿 Use page template 🕥 Inherit from parent page 💿) Create a blank page
		4	Blank master page layout Corporate Site home page layout Corporate Site Master Page with Top Menu Grid 2x2 cells Grid 3x2 cells (CSS) Grid 3x2 cells (CSS) Simple Three columns Three columns, bottom row Top row, two columns, bottom row	Simple Simple layout with one web part zone.

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Menu** tab and disable the **Show in navigation** option. Click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Des	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager	Site:
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview OLive site List		
My Community Site Image: State Blogs	Page Design Form Properties		
Files Group pages Foroups	General Save		
E Home	Template		
e seger	Metadata Menu caption: Categories Show in navigation:		
Media	Menu Show in sitemap:		
	Workflow Menu action Versions • Standard behavior		

4. That's the page finished, now you've got to enter its alias path in the site settings and the group pages of particular groups may be stored under it.

3.13 Creating the Members section

3.13.1 Creating the Members page

This page will be the title page of the Members section. We will base it on the **_StarterTemplate** page template created in <u>this chapter</u>. Besides the web parts from this page template, the page will contain two **Users viewer** web parts in the **zoneCenter** web part zone. The first one will be displaying the 6 most active users of the site. The second one will be displaying all site users, with the pager enabled and 9 records by page. In **zoneRight**, there will also be the **On-line users** web part showing who is currently on-line.

If you right-click a user in of of the **Users viewer**, you will be offered some actions by a context menu. This functionality is provided in the transformation and <u>here</u>, you can find a description of how exactly it is achieved.

1. Select the root of the content tree and click New	r. Choose the Page (menu item)	document type
--	--------------------------------	---------------

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview Dive site List
🖃 🍑 My Community Site	My Community Site
Blogs Files Files Group pages Files Files Foroups Files Files Files Files Files Groups Files Fi	New document Please select new document type: Page (menu item) Plog
····· 🖻 News	Eolder Link an existing document

2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Members* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Members
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.Members
- **Template category**: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Admir	nistration				Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Move	_	J Down	<mark> E</mark> dit		Preview	Live site	Eist		
New Delete Copy Mow	as new - age tem My Comm My Comm This ii	- Webpag Iplate munity Si munitySite munity S	te - Members e.Members ite templates iembers pag		rm Propertie	_StarterTem	plate s new template template as ad-hoc template as ad-hoc template e template settings herit any content herited levels		Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_N	Oł		Cancel	tranet	M 				

4. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Membership** -> **On-line users** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersOnline
- Select top N: 20
- Additional info text: {2} member(s) on-line:

- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Orange Box
- Web part container title: On-line members
- Content after: <div>
View all on-line members</div>

Click OK.

5. In the **zoneCenter** web part zone, we will want an info text displayed above the Users viewers. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

• Web part control ID: editabletextContent

Click OK.

- 6. Switch to the Page tab. Enter the following texts into the Editable text web parts' text fields:
- Heading: Members
- Content: Bellow you can find list of site members. Right click the user to get available actions.

Click Save.

Blogs	Groups	Home	Members	Forums	Media	News	
Members	3						
Bellow yo	ou can find list o	f site members	. Right dick the use	er to get availabl	e actions.		 <u>~</u>
							 ~

7. Now we will add the first **Users viewer** which will display the 6 most active users. Switch back to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> Users viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersList
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: UserActivityPoints DESC
- Select Top N members: 6
- Selected columns: UserID,UserNickName,UserGender,UserDateOfBirth,UserAvatarID, UserActivityPoints,UserName,AvatarGuid
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box Light
- Web part container title: Top members
- Content after: <div class="clear"> </div>

Click OK.

8. The second repeater will display all site members paged by 9. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> Users viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part control ID: AllUsers
- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersList
- Hide if no record found: disabled

- No record found text: No users found
- Selected columns: UserID,UserNickName,UserGender,UserDateOfBirth,UserAvatarID, UserActivityPoints,UserName,AvatarGuid
- Page size: 9
- Paging mode: PostBack
- Group size: 9
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: All members
- Content after: <div class="clear"> </div>

Click OK.

9. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot. Obviously, because there are no users on the site yet, only the Administrator is displayed by the viewers. However, you may try creating a few users via the administration interface or registering on-site. You will see the new users listed on this page.

/Members - page template: My Community Site - Members	
	zoneRight Jogonminiform Sortcuts Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog
AlUsers Ali members Sort by: User name Activity Admin Gender: N/A Age: N/A	Sign out CollineUsers Collers There are currently no users on-line. View all on-line members

3.13.2 Creating the Online page

In the <u>previous example</u>, we have put the **On-line users** web part to the right column. There is a link added by the **Content after** property of the web part, leading to this page. On this page, there will be another **On-line users** web part, which will display all users that are currently on-line.

1. Select the **Members** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Content My Des	C Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit OPreview OLive site List	
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Files Group pages Groups Members Bearch Groups Media Media News	Members New document Please select new document type: Please select new document type: Article Article Blog Cell phone Event	

© 2006 Kentico Software

2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Online* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Members Online
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.MembersOnline
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administratio	n		Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Cor
New Delete Copy Mov		J Down	2	Edit	Rreview	🧿 Live site 📃 List		
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Files Files Group pages Groups			Page Gener URLs		Form Propert	ies		
Home			Tem; Metad		Template:	_StarterTemplate		Select
Page template - Save Save as new participation Template display name:	age tem	plate		g nbers Online		Save as new template Inherit template Clone as ad-hoc template	2	
Template code name:	-	nunitySite.				Edit template properties		
Template category:	Template category: My Community Site templates						3	
Template description:	04		Car	ncel	8	 Do not inherit any content Select inherited levels 		
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	yCommunity	Site/CMSDe	sk 🧐 L	ocal intranet	.;;			

4. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Members on-line* to the heading Editable text web part's text field. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Blogs Groups					
Member	s on-line					

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> On-line users** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

• Use default cache dependencies: enabled

Click OK.

6. The page is now ready. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Members/Online - page template: My Community Site - Members Online	
▼ zoneCenter 🗳	▼ zoneRight 🛟
editabletext Charles	 ✓ Iogonminiform ②
✓ OnlineUsers → users on-line.	✓ Shortcuts
	My profile Edit my profile
	My messages My friends
	My invitations Create a new group
	Create a new blog
	Sign out

3.13.3 Creating the Profile page

On the Profile page, public profiles of users will be displayed based on the wildcard part of the URL. We will set the page's URL to /Members/{UserName}. This means that if you type <sitename>/ Members/David.aspx into the browser, David will be recognized as the wildcard part of the URL and David's profile will be displayed by this page.

The profile is displayed using the **User public profile** web part and is based on the **cms.user**. **EditProfileCommunity** alternative form. You can find more information on how to modify the alternative form in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Members** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->**_**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Profile* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Members Online
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.MembersOnline
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administratio	n			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov		Down	🔁 Ed	lit	Preview	Live site	Eist		
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Files Group pages Groups Home Cogon page Page template - Save Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	My Comm MyComm MyComm My Comm	plate nunity Sit nunitySite munity Sit the Me communit	e - Memb Members e templa mbers	ate ta bers Profile sProfile ites Profile	Template	_StarterTem	s new template. emplate as ad-hoc templ nplate propertie: e template settir herit any conten	ate 2	Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunity	Site/CMSDe	sk 🧐 Loc	al intranet					

4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab and enter */Members/{UserName}* into the **Document alias** field. Click **Save**.

CMS Desk My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager Sit	te:
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit OPreview OLive site EList		
My Community Site Blogs	Page Design Form Properties		
連 🎾 Files 吏 📄 Group pages	General Save		
eren eren eren eren eren eren eren eren	URLs		
Home	Template C Path		
🔤 Eogon page	Metadata Document alias: /Members/{UserNam		
🖃 📄 Members		e}	
🕂 📄 Online	Categories Document URL path:		
Profile	Menu Vse custom URL p	ath	
···· 📄 Search			
🕀 📄 Forums	Workflow Extended properties		
···· 📃 Media	Versions URL extensions:		
····· 📄 News	Related docs Track campaign:		
	Linked deep		

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. In the **zoneRight** web part zone, we will want three info boxes - for displaying the user's friends, blogs and groups. Let's start with the first one. Click the **Add web part** (
icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Friends -> Friends viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersPreviewList
- No record found text: Currently doesn't have any friends.
- Friend status: Approved
- Show filter: disabled
- Selected columns: UserID,UserNickName,UserGender,UserDateOfBirth,UserAvatarID, UserCreated,UserName, AvatarGuid
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: My friends

Click OK.

6. The second info box will be displaying links to the user's blogs. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part control ID: repeaterBlogs
- Path: /Blogs/%
- Document types: CMS.Blog
- ORDER BY expression: DocumentCreatedWhen DESC
- WHERE condition: NodeOwner = '{%SiteContext.CurrentUser.UserID%}'
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogsListRight
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: Currently doesn't have any blogs.
- Web part container: Community Site Orange Box

• Web part container title: My Blogs

Click OK.

7. The third info box will be displaying the groups where the user is a member. Click the Add web part
 (+) icon of the zoneRight web part zone and choose the Community -> Groups viewer web part.
 Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.GroupsPreviewList
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: GroupDisplayName ASC
- WHERE condition: GroupID IN (Select MemberGroupID FROM Community_GroupMember WHERE MemberUserID = '{%SiteContext.CurrentUser.UserID%}' AND MemberStatus = 0)
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: Currently is not member of any group.
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Communty Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: My groups

Click OK.

8. In the **zoneCenter** web part zone, the main web part is the **User public profile**. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> User public profile** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Apply visibility settings: enabled
- Use visibility settings from: cms.user.EditProfileCommunity

Click OK.

9. Below the user's profile, there will be two message boards. The first one will be used only by the owner of the profile. This will be where the user can post announcements for the other users. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the zoneCenter web part zone and choose the Message boards -> Message board web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part control ID: MessageBoardAnnouncements
- No messages text: There are currently no announcements.
- Display name: Anouncements of {%SiteContext.CurrentUser.FullName|(encode)true%}
- Message board owner: User message board
- Access: Only Owner
- Enable subscriptions: enabled
- Board base URL: ~/Members/{%SiteContext.CurrentUser.UserName|(encode)true%}.aspx
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: My announcements

Click OK.

10. Below the first message board, there will be another one. This one will be a public board, which means that anybody can post messages on it. This is where users can leave comments on the user. Click the Add web part (-) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Message boards** -> **Message board** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part control ID: MessageBoardComments
- No messages text: There are currently no comments.
- Display name: Comments on {%SiteContext.CurrentUser.FullName|(encode)true%}
- Message board owner: User message board
- Access: Only authenticated users
- Enable subscriptions: enabled
- Board base URL: ~/Members/{%SiteContext.CurrentUser.UserName|(encode)true%}.aspx
- Web part container: Community Site Red Box Light
- Web part container title: Comments on me

Click OK.

11. The page is now ready. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.



3.13.4 Creating the Members management starter template

Next on in the Members section, we will create a series of five pages that will be used by the users for their accounts management. All the pages will have three web parts common in the **zoneRight** web part zone. These will be info boxes displaying the user's blogs, groups and forum favorites. We will create a starter page template to facilitate the creation of these pages.

1. Select the **Members** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview Site List	
🖃 🌍 My Community Site	Members	
連 📄 Blogs		
🕒 눧 Files	New document	
🕕 📄 Group pages		
🖲 📄 Groups		
···· 📄 Home	Please select new document type:	
···· 📄 Logon page	Page (menu item)	
😑 📄 Members		
😳 📄 Online	Article	
E Profile	2 Blog	

2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *members management template* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: _MembersManagement
- Template code name: MembersManagement
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administratio	n		Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mo	ve Up	Jown	2 E	dit	Preview	O Live site 📃 List		
My Community Site Site Blogs Files Group pages F Groups Home Logon page			Page Genera URLs Temp Metad	al Nate	Form Prope	rties		Select
Page template - Save Save as new p			Dialog		X	Save as new template)	
Template display name: Template code name:	-	sManagen sManagen				Clone as ad-hoc templai	<u>le</u>	
Template category:		the sta	arter	tes template int sectio		t. Use page template setting	s	
Template description:	OK	unity S:	-		91 01 V	 Do not inherit any content Select inherited levels 		
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunity?	5ite/CMSDes	ik 🧐 Lo	cal intranet				

4. Switch to the **Design** tab. We will place the three info boxes into the **zoneRight** web part zone. The first info box will be displaying links to the user's blogs. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Listings and viewers -> Repeater** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part control ID: BlogsRepeater
- Path: /Blogs/%
- Document types: CMS.Blog
- **ORDER BY expression**: DocumentCreatedWhen DESC
- WHERE condition: NodeOwner = {%CurrentUser.UserID%}
- Transformation: Community.Transformations.BlogsListRight
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: You currently do not have any blogs.
- Web part container: Community Site Orange Box
- Web part container title: My Blogs

Click OK.

5. The second info box will be displaying the groups where the user is a member. Click the **Add web** part (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Groups viewer** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.GroupsPreviewList
- Show filter: disabled
- ORDER BY condition: GroupDisplayName ASC
- WHERE condition: GroupID IN (Select MemberGroupID FROM Community_GroupMember WHERE MemberUserID = {%currentuser.userid%} AND MemberStatus = 0)
- Hide if no record found: disabled
- No record found text: Currently is not member of any group.
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Communty Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: My groups

Click OK.

6. The last info box will be displaying the user's forum favorites. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneRight** web part zone and choose the **Forums** -> **Forum favorites** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Use default cache dependencies: enabled
- Web part container: Community Site Gray Box
- Web part container title: Forum favorites

Click OK.

7. That's the page template finished. In Design tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Members/members management template - page template: _MembersManagement	t	
 ✓ zoneCenter ✓ editabletext 	÷	 zoneRight ↓ <li< th=""></li<>
		✓ Shortcuts <a>
		My profile Edit my profile My messages
		My friends My invitations Create a new group
		<u>Create a new blog</u> <u>Sign out</u>
		▼ BlogsRepeater ②
		You currently do not have any blogs.
		GroupsViewer You are currently not member
		of any group.
		ForumFavorites

10. Finally, you can **delete the page** created in this example. We will not need it anymore as the page template is already saved and can be reused.

3.13.5 Creating the Management page

The Management page can be used by site members to manage the details in their public profiles. This functionality is achieved using the **My account** web part, based on the **cms.user**. **EditProfileCommunity** alternative form.

1. Select the **Members** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _MembersManagement** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Management* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Members management
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.MembersManagement
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administr	ation			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
	Dive Up	Down	Z Edit	Rreview	O Live site	List		
My Community Site Blogs Files Group pages Groups Fore	as new		Page Design General URLs Template Dialog	Form Proper	_MembersM	new template		Select
Template display name: My Community Site - Members management Template code name: MyCommunitySite.MembersManagement			 Inherit template Clone as ad-hoc template Edit template properties 					
Template category: Template description:	This is	the Mer	nbers managen nunity Site.	ent 🔨	· · ·	e template settings nerit any content nerited levels	3	
http://localhost/KenticoCM5_M	OK	ite/CMSDesl	Cancel					

4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Into the **Document URL path** field, enter /Members/ {UserName}/Management and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration Switch to Site Manager Site:
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview O Live site List
🖃 🌑 My Community Site 💼 📄 Blogs	Page Design Form Properties
💽 🎾 Files 吏 📄 Group pages	General Save
ere Groups	URLs
···· 📄 Home	Template
E Logon page	Metadata Document alias: Management
🖃 📄 Members	Categories Document URL path: //Members/{UserName}//Management
Online	Menu Use custom URL path
E Search	Workflow C Extended properties
🗈 📄 Forums	Versions URL extensions:
····]= Media ····]= News	Related docs Track campaign:

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. We will only need to place the **My account** web part to the zoneCenter web part zone and set it up properly. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership -> My account** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Form name: cms.user.EditProfileCommunity
- Allow user to edit field visibility: enabled
- Display my address: disabled
- Display my orders: disabled
- Display my credit: disabled
- Display my subscriptions: disabled
- Display my messages: disabled
- Display my friends: disabled
- Content before: <div class="myAccMenu">
- Content after: </div>

Click OK.

6. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *My profile* into the heading Editable text web part's text field. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Groups	Home	Members
My profil	e		

7. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

•	/Members/Management - pa	age template: My Community Site - Members Management	
	▼ zoneCenter		▼ zoneRight 🛟
	▼ editabletext		✓ logonminiform
	▼ MyAccount 🔗; Change	password Notifications	▼ Shortcuts 🕜
			My profile Edit my profile
	Username:	administrator	My messages
	Full name:	Global Administrator	My friends My invitations
	E-mail:	admin@mydomainXY.com	Create a new group
	Display my e-mail to:	○Nobody ○All ④Site members ○Friends	Create a new blog
	Nickname:	Admin	Sign out
	There is the second sec		▼ BlogsRepeater ♂
	Signature:		You currently do not have any blogs.
		~	
	Messaging notification e-mail:		▼ GroupsViewer
	Time zone:	(none)	You are currently not member of any group.
	time zone:	(none)	or any group
			▼ ForumFavorites ③
			No favorites found
	Avatar:		
		×	
		Upload: Browse	
		Select pre-defined avatar	
	Gender:	O Male O Female	
	Date of birth:		
	טמנפ טו טורטו:		
		ОК	

3.13.6 Creating the Invitations page

On the Invitations page, users will see their invitations to groups and will be able to manage them. This functionality will be provided by the **My invitations** and **My sent invitations** web parts. The page is accessible from the **Shortcuts** menu, by clicking the **My invitations** link.

1. Select the **Management** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk My Des	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager		
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview OLive site List			
🖃 🌖 My Community Site	Members 🕨 Management			
連 📄 Blogs				
🕕 📁 Files	New document			
🕕 📄 Group pages				
吏 📄 Groups				
···· 📄 Home	Please select new document type:			
📄 Logon page	Page (menu item)			
😑 📄 Members				
😳 📄 Management	Article			
···· 📄 Online	Rlog			

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**MembersManagement** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Invitations* and click **Save**.


- Template display name: My Community Site Invitations
- Template code name: My Community Site.Invitations
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administratio	n				5	witch to Site	Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mo	ve Up	Down	2	Edit	C Preview	· .	Live site	E List				
My Community Site Blogs Files Group pages Company Page template - Save Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	as new age temp My Comm MyComm	Webpage plate unity Site unity Site the In- unity S:	- Invita nvitation templa vitati	plate data tions ns ates ions page	Templat	e:	_MembersM	lanagement s new template as ad-hoc ter nplate prope e template so herit any con herited levels	mplate rties ettings tent			Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	yCommunityS	iite/CMSDes	k 🧐 Lo	cal intranet								

4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Into the **Document URL path** field, enter /Members/ {UserName}/Invitations and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Ontent My Desk	Tools Administration Switch to Site Manager Site							
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit OPreview OLive site EList							
🖃 🌑 My Community Site 連 📄 Blogs	Page Design Form Properties							
🖭 🎾 Files 吏 📄 Group pages	General Save							
🗐 📄 Groups	URLs							
···· 📄 Home	Template Path							
E Logon page	Metadata Document alias: Invitations							
😑 📄 Management	Categories Document URL path: //Members/{UserName}/Invitations							
Invitations	Menu Use custom URL path							
Online	Workflow Extended properties							
E Search	Versions URL extensions:							
🕂 📄 Forums E Media	Related docs							

5. Switch to the Page tab. Enter My invitations into the Editable text web part's text field and click Save

Blogs	Groups	Home	Members					
My invita	tions							

6. Switch to the **Design** tab. First, we will add the **My invitations** web part, which will display the user's received invitations. Click the **Add web part** () icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> My invitations** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Zero rows text: You have currently no invitations.
- Hide control for zero rows: disabled
- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: Received invitations

Click OK.

7. The second web part on this page will be displaying the user's sent invitations. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> My sent invitations** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Web part container: Community Site Blue Box Light
- Web part container title: My sent invitations

Click OK.

8. The page is now finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Members/Management/Invitations - page template: My Community Site - Invitations	2
▼ zoneCenter 🔶	▼ zoneRight 🛟
v editabletext of hs	✓ logonminiform
VyInvitations	▼ Shortcuts @
Received invitations	My profile Edit my profile
You have currently no invitations.	My messages
VySentInvitations 🚱	My friends My invitations
	Create a new group
	<u>Create a new blog</u> Sign out
	▼ BlogsRepeater 🎯
	You currently do not have any blogs.
	GroupsViewer You are currently not member
	of any group.
	▼ ForumFavorites ③
	No favorites found

3.13.7 Creating the Messages page

The Messages page will provide users with the functionality of private messaging. The page is accessible from the Shortcuts menu, by clicking the **My messages** link. Its main part is the **My Messages** web part. For more information on the Messaging module, please refer to <u>Kentico CMS</u> Developer's Guide -> Module Messaging.

1. Select the **Management** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager
Edit Preview OLive site List	
Members > Management	
New desument	
Please select new document type:	
Dage (menu item)	
E Pade (menu icem)	
Article	
	Edit Preview Live site List Members > Management New document

2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _MembersManagement** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Messages* and click **Save**.



- Template display name: My Community Site Messages
- Template code name: My Community Site.Messages
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administ	ration			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
	Dve Up	Jown	🔁 Edit	Review	O Live site	Eist		
My Community Site Blogs Files Group pages For Groups Home Dege template - Save Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	Age temp My Comm My Commu My Commu This is page of OK	unity Site unity Site.N unity Site the Mer My Comr	- Messages Messages templates munity Site. Cancel	Template:	MembersM	lanagement s new template template as ad-hoc template nplate properties e template settings herit any content herited levels		Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunityS	ite/CMSDes	K 🤜 Local intranet					

4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Into the **Document URL path** field, enter /Members/ {UserName}/Messages and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration Site Manager Site
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit OPreview OLive site EList
🖃 🌑 My Community Site 💼 📄 Blogs	Page Design Form Properties
💽 🞾 Files 吏 📄 Group pages	General Save
	URLs
···· 📃 Home	Template Path
E Logon page	Metadata Document alias: Messages
🖃 📄 Management	Categories Document URL path: //Members/{UserName}//Messages
Invitations	Menu Use custom URL path
Messages	Workflow Extended properties
Profile	Versions URL extensions:
🖳 📄 Search	Related docs Track campaign:
😟 📄 Forums	

5. Switch to the Page tab. Enter My messages into the Editable text web part's text field and click Save

Blogs	Groups	Home	Members				
My mes	sages						

.

6. Switch to the **Design** tab. Here, we will only need to add the **My messages** web part into the **zoneCenter** web part zone. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Messaging -> My messages** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, leave all of them at the default values.

7. The page is now finished, in **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Members/Management/Messages - page template: My Community Site - Messages	
▼ zoneCenter 🔶	▼ zoneRight
ry messages	✓ logonminiform
MyMessages Contact list Ignore list	Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile
New message Delete all messages 0 unread message(s) of 0 total	My messages My friends My invitations
	<u>Create a new group</u> <u>Create a new blog</u> <u>Sign out</u>
	▼ BlogsRepeater You currently do not have any
	logs.
	You are currently not member of any group.
	ForumFavorites

3.13.8 Creating the Friends page

On the Friends page, users will see an overview of their friends, provided by the **Friends viewer** web part. Users will be able to request new friendships from this page too. There will also be a link to the **Manage friends** page which we will create in the <u>following example</u>. Detailed information on the Friends module can be found in <u>Kentico CMS Developer's Guide -> Module Friends</u>.

1. Select the **Management** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager				
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview Site List					
🖃 🌖 My Community Site	Members > Management					
🕘 🗄 Blogs						
🗉 📁 Files	New document					
🖲 📄 Group pages						
🗄 📄 Groups						
	Please select new document type:					
😳 📄 Logon page	Page (menu item)					
😑 📄 Members						
🚊 📄 Management	Article					
📄 📄 Invitations	Blog					
📄 Messages						

2. Select the **My Community Site templates -> _MembersManagement** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Friends* and click **Save**.



- Template display name: My Community Site Friends
- Template code name: My Community Site.Friends
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools A	Administratior	1			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mor		Down	Z Edit	it 🖸	Rreview	O Live site	List		
New Delete Copy Mo My Community Site Blogs Files Group pages Groups Home Page template - Save Save as new p Template display name:	as new	Webpag		te	Form Proper	_MembersM	emplate s ad-hoc template		Select
Template code name: Template category:		unitySite.			~		nplate properties		
Template description:	This is	the Fr		age of M			e template settings nerit any content nerited levels	5	
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunity	Site/CMSDe	sk 🧐 Loca	al intranet					

4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Into the **Document URL path** field, enter /*Members*/ {*UserName*}/*Friends* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration Switch to Site Manager Site	te:
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview ILive site List	
🖃 🌑 My Community Site 👜 📄 Blogs	Page Design Form Properties	_
🕣 🔁 Files	General Save	
	URLs	
···· 📄 Home	Template C Path	
El Logon page	Metadata Document alias: Friends	
🖃 📄 Members	Categories Document URL path: //Members/{UserName}/Friends	
Friends	Menu Use custom URL path	
F Messages	Workflow C Extended properties	
📄 Online	Versions URL extensions:	
E Profile	Related docs Track campaign:	

5. Switch to the **Page** tab. Enter *My friends* into the Editable text web part's text field and click **Save**.

Blogs	Groups	Home	Members
My friend	ls		

6. Switch to the **Design** tab. Frist, we will add the **Request friendship** web part, which will enable users to request other users' friendship. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Friends -> Request friendship** web part. Set only the following property of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

• Link text: Add a friend

Click OK.

7. Below, we will place the **Static text** web part with a link to the **Manage friends** page. Click the **Add** web part (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: ManageFriendsLink
- Text: Manage my friends

Click OK.

8. Finally, we will add the Friends viewer web part, which will display the user's friends. Click the Add web part (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Friends ->** Friends viewer web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Transformation name: Community.Transformations.MembersList
- Hide if no record found: diabled

- No record found text: You currently do not have any friends.
- Friend status: Approved
- Use default cache dependencies: enabled

Click OK.

9. The page is finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.



You currently do not have any blogs.

You are currently not member of any group.

ForumFavorites

3.13.9 Creating the Manage friends page

The Manage friends page, as its name should indicate, will provide users with the friendship management functionality. It is accessible from the **Friends** page created in the <u>previous chapter</u>. The friendship management functionality will be provided by the **My friends** web part.

1. Select the **Management** page in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview Dive site List	
My Community Site	Members > Management	
● Ē Blogs ● Þ Files ● Ē Group pages	New document	
	Please select new document type:	
E Logon page	Page (menu item)	
🖃 📄 Management	Article	
Friends	📝 <u>Blog</u>	
 Invitations Messages 	Cell phone	

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->** _**MembersManagement** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Manage friends* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Manage friends
- Template code name: My Community Site.ManageFriends
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration				Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov	e Up	Down	Z Edit	Preview	Live site	Eist		
Wew Delete Copy Mov My Community Site Blogs Files Group pages Files Copy Page Home Copy Page Page template - Save Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	age tem My Comm My Comm My Comm This is	- Webpag plate munity Site munity Site munity Site s the M Communi	Page Design For General URLS Template Metadata ge Dialog te - Manage friends Manage Friends te templates anage friends page ty Site.	Template:	MembersMar Save as r Inherit ter Clone as Edit temp	new template mplate ad-hoc template plate properties emplate settings erit any content		Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunity	/Site/CMSD	esk 🧐 Local intranet					

4. Switch to the **Properties -> URLs** tab. Into the **Document URL path** field, enter /*Members*/ {*UserName*}/*Friends*/*Manage* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager Site:
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview Site List	
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Page Design Form Properties	
🖅 🍃 Files	General	
	URLs Save	
E Home	Template C Path	
😳 📄 Logon page	Metadata Document alias: Manage-friends	
🖃 📄 Members		
🖃 📄 Management	Categories Document ORL path: /Members/{UserNan	ie}/Friends/Manage
😳 📄 Friends	Menu Vse custom URL	path
🛛 📄 Invitations		
···· 📄 Manage friends	Workflow C Extended properties	
📄 Messages	Versions URL extensions:	
Online	Related docs Track campaign:	
🔤 Profile		

5. Switch to the **Page** tab. Enter *Manage my friends* into the Editable text web part's text field and click **Save**.

Blogs	Groups	Home	Members	
Manage	my friends			

6. The **zoneCenter** web part zone will host two web parts. The first one of them will be the **Static text** web part with a link leading back to the **Friends** page. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Static text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the rest at the default values.

- Web part control ID: BackToFriends
- Text: < Back to friends

Click OK.

7. Now we will add the **My friends** web part used for friends management. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Friends -> My friends** web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part. Just leave all of them at the default values and click **OK**.

8. The page is finished. In **Design** tab, it should look as in the following screenshot.

/Members/Management/Manage friends - page template: My Community Site - Manage friends	2
▼ zoneCenter 🔶	▼ zoneRight
Fiends	✓ logonminiform
▼ BackToFriends ③	▼ Shortcuts 🔗
	My profile Edit my profile
✓ MyFriends ♂ y pending requests Rejected friends	My messages
Add a friend	My friends My invitations
My current friends	Create a new group Create a new blog
You currently do not have any friends.	Sign out
	▼ BlogsRepeater ③
	You currently do not have any blogs.
	▼ GroupsViewer ③ You are currently not member of any group.
	ForumFavorites

3.14 Creating the Special pages

3.14.1 Creating the Special pages folder

The special pages section consists of pages that do not display any content. Instead, these pages contain special web parts for performing actions like user registration approval, unsubscription from various notifications, acceptation for group invitation, etc.

In the following example, we will create a folder in which the special pages will be stored.

1. Go to **CMS Desk**, select the root of the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Folder** document type.



2. Enter Special pages into the Document name filed and click Save.



3. The folder has been created and the special pages can now be placed under it.

🖃 🌍 My Community Site
🖲 📄 Blogs
🗉 📁 Files
🗉 📄 Group pages
🖃 📄 Groups
···· 📄 Home
\cdots 📄 Logon page
🖭 📄 Members
😳 📄 Search
🖃 📄 Forums
🖳 📄 Media
📄 📄 News
🦢 🗁 Special pages

3.14.2 Creating the Access denied page

The first special page will be the Access denied page. This is where users with insufficient permissions will be redirected after accessing some secured page. The page will contain only an **Editable text** web part which will display the access denied message.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->**_**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Access denied* and click **Save**.



- Template display name: My Community Site Access Denied
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.AccessDenied
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administrati	on			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov		P Down	2 E	Edit	Preview	· [💽 Live site 📃 List		
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Files Group pages Groups Home Cogon page Page template - Save Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	as new	Webpag plate nunity Site nunity Site the Ac nunity S	e - Access Access e templ	plate lata 3 ess Denied sDenied lates Denied pa	Templat		es		Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunity	Site/CMSDe	sk 🧐 Lo	ocal intranet					

4. Switch to the **Design** tab. We will only need to add the **Editable text** web part into the **zoneCenter** web part zone, below the **Editable text** web part for heading. Click the **Add web part** () icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Text -> Editable text** web part. Set the following properties of the web part. You do not need to set any properties of the web part, just leave all of them at the default values.

In **Design** tab, the page should now look as in the following screenshot.

•	/Special pages/Access denied - page template: My Community Site - Access Denied	2
	▼ zoneCenter 🕀	▼ zoneRight 🔒
	▼ editabletext 🔗	
	▼ editabletext1 ③	▼ Shortcuts



5. Switch to the **Page** tab. You can see two editable text regions on the page now - one for heading and one for the warning text. Enter the following texts into the text areas:

- Heading: Access denied
- Warning text: You're not allowed to access the required page. Please contact the administrator if you think you should be allowed to access it.

Click Save.



Create a new blog Sign out

The page is complete. If you view it in **Live site** mode, you should see the page as in the following screenshot. Please note that the Logon mini form is displayed only to unauthenticated users.



3.14.3 Creating the Blog unsubscribe page

The Blog unsubscribe page will be used to handle blog post unsubscription requests. Users are able to subscribe to receiving notifications about new blog comments on a particular blog post. Notification e-mails contain an unsubscription link leading to this page with the subscription GUID in the query string parameter. By clicking this link, users can unsubscribe from receiving the notifications. The unsubscription request is handled by the **Blog post unsubscription** web part on this page.

In order to for the page to be functional, you need to set its URL in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Blogs** -> **Blog unsubscription URL**, as described in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->**_**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Blog unsubscribe* and click **Save**.



- Template display name: My Community Site Blog unsubscribe
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.BlogUnsubscribe
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administratio	п			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov	e Up	J Down	Z Edit	C Preview	Live site	Eist		
New Delete Copy Mov My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Files Group pages For page Page template - Save Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template category:	as new	Webpag plate nunity Site nunity Site nunity Site	Page Design General URLs Template Metadata e Dialog e - Blog unsubscribe BlogUnsubscribe ie templates Log unsubscribe	*	_StarterTem Save and Part Inherit I Clone a Edit ter	plate s new template template as ad-hoc template nplate properties e template settings		Select
Template description:	ОК		Cancel	×	~	herit any content		

4. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Blog unsubscribe* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Groups	н	0	m	e	•	
Blog unsub	scribe	 					_

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Blogs** -> **Blog post unsubscription** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Confirmation text: You have been successfully unsubscribed.
- Content before: <h3>
- Content after: </h3>

Click **OK**. The page is now finished and ready to handle the unsubscription requests.

/Special pages/Blog unsubscribe - page template: My Community Site - Blog unsubscribe	
/Special pages/Blog unsubscribe - page template: My Community Site - Blog unsubscribe zoneCenter editabletext @ cribe BlogPostUnsubscription @	zoneRight logonminiform J Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog

3.14.4 Creating the Board unsubscribe page

This page will be used to handle message board unsubscription requests. There are several message boards throughout the whole site. Users can subscribe to receiving e-mail notifications about new messages on a particular board. The notification e-mails contain an unsubscription link leading to this page. When a user clicks it, she is redirected to this page with the subscription GUID in query string parameter. On the page, the **Message board unsubscription** web part will handle the request and perform unsubscription.

In order to for the page to be functional, you need to set its URL in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Message boards -> Board unsubscription URL**, as described in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administration
New Delete Copy	Move Up	Jown	Edit Preview Site List
🖃 🌖 My Community S	ite		Special pages
🕀 📄 Blogs			
🗉 📁 Files			New document
🗉 📄 Group pages			
🕕 📄 Groups			
🖳 📄 Home			Please select new document type:
🔤 📄 Logon page			🗐 <u>Page (menu item)</u>
🗉 📄 Members			E Page (mend icem)
📄 📄 Search			
🗉 📄 Forums			🗒 <u>File</u>
🛛 📄 Media			Folder
🛛 📄 News			
😑 🝃 Special pages	5		Link an existing document
🔤 📄 📄	nied		
🔤 📄 Blog unsu	bscribe		

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->**_**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Board unsubscribe* and click **Save**.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager Site: My Community Site
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview Dive site List	
Wy Community Site My Community Site Files Group pages Groups Groups Groups Files Groups Files Groups Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files Files File	Special pages Save Save and create another Spell check Page name: Board unsubscribe	
Forums Media News Special pages Access denied F Blog unsubscribe	 Use page template Inherit from parent page Categories Articles Blogs E-commerce Events Forums Forums Forums Home pages Job openings Knowledge base Master templates Membership and security 	Create a blank page no image StarterTemplate Ny Community Site - Access Denied no image No image

3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Board unsubscribe
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.BoardUnsubscribe

- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administrati	on			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mo	ve Up	Down	Edit	Preview	Live site	E List		
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Group pages Groups Files Groups Fore Cogon page Page template - Save Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	My Comm MyComm MyComm My Comm This is	plate nunity Site unitySite. nunity Sit the Bc My Con	Page Design General URLs Template Metadata e Dialog e - Board unsubscrib e templates e templates e ard unsubscrib munity Site.	*	_StarterTem Save as A Inherit I Clone a I Edit ten Use page O Do not in	plate s new template emplate as ad-hoc template as ad-hoc template satemplate properties herit any content herit any content herited levels		Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_N	lyCommunity:	Site/CMSDe	sk 🧐 Local intranet					

4. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Blog unsubscribe* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Groups	Home				
Board ur	nsubscribe					

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Message board -> Message board unsubscription** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Confirmation text: You have been successfully unsubscribed.
- Content before: <h3>
- Content after: </h3>

Click OK. The page is now finished and ready to handle the unsubscription requests.

/Special pages/Board unsubscribe - page template: My Community Site - Board unsubscribe	2
▼ zoneCenter	🗣 👻 zoneRight
editabletext another scribe	 ✓ Iogonminiform ②
▼ MessageBoardUnsubscription	Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile
	<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> <u>My invitations</u>
	<u>Create a new group</u> <u>Create a new blog</u> Sign out

3.14.5 Creating the Forum unsubscribe page

The last of the unsubscription pages is the Forum unsubscribe page. In the Forums section, users have the possibility to subscribe to receiving notification e-mails about new posts in a particular forum thread. The notification e-mails contain unsubscription links leading to this page. The GUID of the subscription is contained in the querystring parameter. The main part of this page is the **Forum unsubscription** web part. When a user clicks the unsubscription link, she is redirected to this page where the web part handles the unsubscription request.

In order to for the page to be functional, you need to set its URL in **Site Manager -> Settings ->** Forums -> Forum unsubscription URL, as described in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->**_**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Forum unsubscribe* and click **Save**.



- Template display name: My Community Site Forum unsubscribe
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.ForumUnsubscribe
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administratio	n			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mo		Down	Z Edit	Preview	O Live site	Eist		
My Community Site Blogs Files Group pages Files Coroup pages Files Page template - Save Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	as new age temp My Comm MyCommu My Comm This is	Webpage alate unity Site unity Site. unity Site the Fo	Page Design General URLs Template Metadata e Dialog e - Forum unsubscrib ForumUnsubscribe e templates rum unsubscrib munity Site.	~	_StarterTem Save as Particular Save as Inheritular Clone as Clone as	plate s new template template as ad-hoc template nplate properties e template settings herit any content herited levels		Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunityS	ite/CMSDe:	sk 🧐 Local intranet	.;;				

4. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Forum unsubscribe* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Groups	Home	
Forum u	nsubscribe		-
			_

Create a new group Create a new blog Sign out

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Forums -> Forum unsubscription** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Content before: <h3>
- Content after: </h3>

Click OK. The page is now finished and ready to handle the unsubscription requests.

/Special pages/Forum unsubscribe - page template: My Community Site - Forum unsubscribe	2
▼ zoneCenter 🔶	💌 zoneRight 🕞
▼ editabletext 🔗	
▼ ForumUnsubscription ③	▼ Shortcuts @
	Shortcuts ⊙
	My profile Edit my profile
	My messages
	My friends My invitations

3.14.6 Creating the Friend management page

One of the community features in Kentico CMS is the Friends module. It provides users the possibility of creating social relations - friendships. This special page will contain the **Friendship management** web part, which handles the friendship approval or rejection requests.

In order to for the page to be functional, you need to set its alias path in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Community -> Friend management path**, as described in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit Preview Site List	
🖃 🌖 My Community Site	Special pages	
进 📄 Blogs		
🕒 📁 Files	New document	
🗄 📄 Group pages		
🗄 📄 Groups	Plana allah ang dan sa kikara	
E Home	Please select new document type:	
···· 📄 Logon page	Page (menu item)	
🕒 📄 Members		
🔄 🗾 Search		
🕒 📄 Forums	🖥 <u>File</u>	
···· 📄 Media	눧 <u>Folder</u>	
···· 📄 News		
🖃 🞾 Special pages	Link an existing document	
E Access denied		
···· 📄 Blog unsubscribe		
📨 📄 Board unsubscribe		
🔤 Forum unsubscribe 🍵		

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->**_**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Friend management* and click **Save**.



- Template display name: My Community Site Friend management
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.FriendManagement
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools	Administratio	n			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mo		Down	2 E	dit	Preview	O Live site	E List		
My Community Site Blogs Files Group pages Compage Page template - Save Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	as new age temp My Comm My Comm	Webpagg plate nunity Site nunity Site the Fr My Com	e - Frien FriendM e templa iend r	al blate ata d management lanagement ates managemen' y Site.	~	_StarterTem Save as Particular Clone as Clone as Cl	plate <u>a new template</u> <u>emplate</u> <u>as ad-hoc template</u> nplate properties e template settings herit any content herited levels		Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunity:	Site/CMSDe:	sk 🧐 Lo	ical intranet	.:				
Sign out

4. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Friend management* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Groups	Home
Friend m	anagement	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Friends -> Friendship management** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- My friends page path: /Members/{%CurrentUser.UserName|(encode)true%}/Friends
- Send notification message: enabled
- Send notification e-mail: enabled
- Content after:

Click **OK**. The page is now finished and ready to handle the friendship management requests.

-	/Special pages/Friend management - page template: My Community Site - Friend management	2
	▼ zoneCenter	▼ zoneRight
ļ	editabletext @	 ✓ Iogonminiform ②
[FriendshipManagement	Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile
		<u>My messages</u> <u>My friends</u> <u>My invitations</u>
		Create a new group Create a new blog

326

3.14.7 Creating the Invitation acceptation page

This special page is related to Kentico CMS Groups module. Members of a group can send e-mail invitations to join the group. In the e-mail, there is a link leading to this page with the invitation GUID in query string parameter. When a user clicks the link, she will be redirected to this page where the **Group invitation** web part handles the invitation and makes the user a member of the group.

In order to for the page to be functional, you need to set its alias path in **Site Manager -> Settings -> Community -> Invitation acceptation path**, as described in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.



2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->**_**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Invitation acceptation* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Invitation acceptation
- Template code name: MyCommunitySite.InvitationAcceptation
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administrati	on			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov		Down	Edit	C Preview	Live site	Eist		
My Community Site Blogs Files Group pages Files Coups Home Dege template - Save Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	as new age tem My Comr My Comr My Comr This is	Webpag plate nunity Sit nunity Site munity Site s the Ir stion pe	Page Design General URLs Template Metadata e Dialog e - Invitation accept InvitationAcceptation acceptates avitation accept My Communication accept My	n V	_StarterTem Save as A Inheritt Clone a Clone a Editten O Use page O Do not ini	plate <u>s new template</u> <u>template</u> <u>as ad-hoc template</u> <u>nplate properties</u> e template settings herit any content herited levels		Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunity	/Site/CMSDe	esk 🧐 Local intranet					

4. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Invitation acceptation* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Groups	Home			
			_		
Invitation	acceptation		_		

Sign out

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Community -> Group invitation** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- Content before: <h3>
- Content after: </h3>

Click **OK**. The page is now finished and ready to handle the invitations.

/Special pages/Invitation acceptation - page template: My Community Site - Invitation acceptation	
▼ zoneCenter	▼ zoneRight
	 ✓ Iogonminiform ③
GroupInvitation	Shortcuts
	Edit my profile My messages My friends
	My invitations
	Create a new group

3.14.8 Creating the Registration approval page

After registration to the page, users don't become members immediately. Instead, an e-mail is sent to them with the registration approval link. The link is leading to this page and contains the registration GUID in query string parameter. When the user clicks this link, the **Registration e-mail confirmation** web part on this page handles the registration approval request and the user becomes a member.

In order to for the page to be functional, you need to set its URL into **E-mail confirmation page** property of the **Custom registration form** web part, as described in <u>this chapter</u>.

1. Select the **Special pages** folder in the content tree and click **New**. Choose the **Page (menu item)** document type.

CMS Desk Content My Desk	Tools Administration	Switch to Site Manager
New Delete Copy Move Up Down	Edit OPreview OLive site List	
🖃 🍑 My Community Site	Special pages	
	New document	
⊕ Ē Groups F Home	Please select new document type:	
E Logon page	🖹 <u>Page (menu item)</u>	
	🗊 <u>File</u>	
····] Media News	Folder	
Special pages Control Contro	Link an existing document	

2. Select the **My Community Site templates ->**_**StarterTemplate** created in <u>this chapter</u>. Into the **Page name** field, enter *Registration approval* and click **Save**.



3. Switch to the **Properties -> Template** tab and click the **Save as new template** link. Enter the following details in the pop-up dialog:

- Template display name: My Community Site Registration approval
- **Template code name**: MyCommunitySite.Registration approval
- Template category: My Community Site templates
- Template description: some text describing the page template

Click OK. Click Save.

CMS Desk	Content	My Desk	Tools Administ	ration			Switch to Site Manager	Site: My Co
New Delete Copy Mov		J Down	🔁 Edit	Q Preview	Live site	List		
My Community Site My Community Site Blogs Files Groups Groups Borne Page template - Save Save as new p Template display name: Template code name: Template category: Template description:	My Comr My Comr My Comr This is page of	plate nunity Sit nunity Site munity Site the Re ty Cor	e - Registration RegistrationApp te templates egistration mmunity Site Cancel	approval	_StarterTem Save as inheritt Clone a Clone a Edit ten Use page O to not ini	plate s new template emplate as ad-hoc template aplate properties e template settings herit any content herited levels		Select
http://localhost/KenticoCMS_M	lyCommunity	/Site/CMSDe	esk 🤧 Local intran					

4. Switch to the **Page** tab and enter *Registration approval* into the Editable text web part's text box. Click **Save**.

Blogs	Home	
Registra	tion approval	

5. Switch to the **Design** tab. Click the **Add web part** (+) icon of the **zoneCenter** web part zone and choose the **Membership** -> **Registration e-mail confirmation** web part. Set the following properties of the web part, leave the default values for the rest of them:

- From address: no-reply@mycommunitysite.com
- Administrator e-mail: admin@mycommunitysite.com
- Notify administrator: enabled
- Successful approval text: Your user account is now active. You can sign in using your user name and password. Click here to continue
- Unsuccessful approval text: Your registration wasn't approved.
- User deleted text: The user account has been already deleted.
- Content after:

Click OK. The page is now finished and ready to handle the registration approval requests.

/Special pages/Registration approval - page template: My Community Site - Registration approval	
✓ zoneCenter ✓	 zoneRight Iogonminiform ♂
▼ RegistrationConfirmation ③	Shortcuts My profile Edit my profile
	My messages My friends My invitations Create a new group Create a new blog
	Sign out

3.15 Ordering pages in the content tree

Once all the pages are created, it is a good idea to give them a logical organization in the content tree. Use the Up and Down buttons to move pages to achieve the same page order as in the screenshot below.



3.16 Making the settings

To get the site working, you also have to make several settings in the **Site manager -> Settings** section.

1. First, select the name of your site from the **Site** drop-down list in the top left corner of the page.

CMS Site Manager Sites Admin	stration Settings	Development	Licenses	Support	Swit	ch to CMS Desk User: Global /
Site: My Community Site	Sett	ings				
Settings Web site Content management	Save	Reset the	se settings to	o default		
Files				_		
	Cache co	ntent (minutes)		2	10	🗹 Inherit from global settings
	Cache im	ages (minutes)		2	10	Inherit from global settings
	Cache pa	ge info (minutes)	2	10	Inherit from global settings
E-mails	Combine	with default cultu	ire	2		Inherit from global settings
Bad words	Combine	files with default	culture	2	✓	Inherit from global settings
😪 Blogs 腸 Booking system	Default al	ias path		?	/Home Select	Inherit from global settings
- 🔐 Community 	Default ci	ulture of the conte	ent	0	English - United States	Inherit from global settings
- Second	Page des	cription prefix		0		Inherit from global settings
📲 Media libraries 💿 Message boards	Page key	words prefix		?		🗹 Inherit from global settings
🖾 Messaging 🕼 Web analytics	Page title	format		2	{%prefix%} - {%pagetitle_orelse_name%}	Inherit from global settings
Vindows LiveID	Page title	prefix		0	My Community Site	Inherit from global settings
🚽 E-commerce Bayment gateway - Authorize.N	Page not	found for non-pu	blished doo	cuments 📀	\checkmark	Inherit from global settings
📲 Payment gateway - PayPal	Page not	found URL		2		🗹 Inherit from global settings
	Exclude of	locument types fr	om search	0	Select	Inherit from global settings
	Exclude of	locuments from s	search	?	/Special-Pages/%	Inherit from global settings
	Control e	lement		0	div	🗹 Inherit from global settings

1. In Site Manager -> Settings -> Web site, make the following settings. Remember that you need to uncheck the Inherit from global settings check-box in order to be able to enter values into the fields.

- Default alias path: /Home
- Default culture of the content: English United States
- Page title prefix: My Community Site
- Exclude documents from search: /Special-Pages/%

Click Save.

- 2. In Site Manager -> Settings -> Security, make the following settings:
- Check page permissions: No page
- Website logon page URL: ~/Logon.aspx

Click Save.

- 3. In Site Manager -> Settings -> Blogs, set the following value:
- Blog unsubscription URL: ~/Special-Pages/Blog-Unsubscription.aspx

Click Save.

4. In Site Manager -> Settings -> Community, enter the following values:

- Group security access denied path: /Groups/{GroupName}/Access
- Group management path: /Groups/{GroupName}/Management
- Group profile path: /Groups/{GroupName}
- Member management path: /Members/{UserName}/Management
- Member profile path: /Members/{UserName}
- Invitation acceptation path: /Special-Pages/Invitation-Acceptation
- Friend management path: /Special-Pages/Friend-Management

Click Save.

- 5. In Site Manager -> Settings -> Forums, enter the following values:
- Forum unsubscription URL: ~/Special-Pages/Forum-Unsubscribe.aspx
- Forum base URL: ~/Forums.aspx

Click Save.

- 6. In Site Manager -> Settings -> Message boards, adjust the following property:
- Board unsubscription URL: ~/Special-Pages/Board-Unsubscribe.aspx

Click Save.

7. The settings are done. The whole web site should now be fully functional.